

# NORTHAM

P L A T I N U M   L I M I T E D



smart platinum mining

---

**ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**2017**

**WE BELIEVE IN**  
OUR COUNTRY,  
OUR COMPANY,  
OUR PEOPLE AND  
OUR PRODUCT

smart platinum mining



## CONTENTS

|                                               |    |
|-----------------------------------------------|----|
| Independent auditors' report                  | 1  |
| Directors' report                             | 5  |
| Audit and risk committee report               | 29 |
| Approval and company secretary's confirmation | 33 |

|                                    |           |
|------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</b> | <b>34</b> |
|------------------------------------|-----------|

|                                               |            |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>ADMINISTRATION AND CONTACT INFORMATION</b> | <b>IBC</b> |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------|

The annual financial statements have been prepared under the supervision of the chief financial officer, Mr AZ Khumalo CA (SA).

**NORTHAM**  
P L A T I N U M L I M I T E D



EY  
102 Rivonia Road  
Sandton  
Private Bag X14  
Sandton  
2146

Ernst & Young Incorporated  
Co. Reg. No. 2005/002308/21  
Tel: +27 (0) 11 772 3000  
Fax: +27 (0) 11 772 4000  
Docex 123 Randburg  
ey.com

# INDEPENDENT AUDITORS REPORT

To the Shareholders of Northam Platinum Limited

*Report on the Audit of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements for the year ended 30 June 2017*

## Opinion

We have audited the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements of Northam Platinum Limited and its subsidiaries (the Group) set out on pages 34 to 135, which comprise the statement of financial position as at 30 June 2017, and the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements present fairly, in all material respects, the consolidated and separate financial position of the Group and the Company as at 30 June 2017, and of its consolidated and separate financial performance and its consolidated and separate cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) and the requirements of the Companies Act of South Africa.

## Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the group in accordance with the Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors Code of Professional Conduct for Registered Auditors (IRBA Code), the International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants (IESBA code) and other independence requirements applicable to performing audits of Northam Platinum Limited and its subsidiaries. We have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the IRBA Code, IESBA Code, and in accordance with other ethical requirements applicable to performing the audit of Northam Platinum Limited and its subsidiaries. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

## Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements taken as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. For each matter below, our description of how our audit addressed the matter is provided in that context.

We have fulfilled the responsibilities described in the Auditor's responsibilities for the audit of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements section of our report, including in relation to these matters. Accordingly, our audit included the performance of procedures designed to respond to our assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements. The results of our audit procedures, including the procedures performed to address the matters below, provide the basis for our audit opinion on the accompanying financial statements.

The Key Audit Matters applies equally to the audit of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements.

| Key Audit Matter                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | How our audit addressed the Key Audit Matter                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Impairment of non-financial assets</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <p>From the Platinum Group Metal basket it was the main metal, platinum, that have been under continued pricing pressure (US denominated) during the current year; and the Rand price for platinum declining during the year from already low levels in the prior year. The platinum sector has also experienced rising costs in most aspects of the business, consistent with the prior year. As a result there is continuous focus on the appropriateness of the assumptions used in Life of Mine planning.</p> <p>The Group determines the recoverable amount of non-financial assets at the higher of fair value less cost of disposal and value in use as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reserves included in the life of mine plan, a discounted cash flow model approach is used;</li> <li>In-situ resources, not included in the Life of Mine plan, using the comparable transaction approach and listed entity market capitalisation per platinum ounce for early stage platinum companies.</li> </ul> <p>As detailed in note 2.1 and 2.4 of the notes to the financial statements the assessment of the Group's Life of Mine plans and any related impairment to the carrying value of mining assets requires significant estimation by management on key assumptions, which include future metal prices, exchange rates, ore reserves and production volumes, production cost, capital expenditure, inflation rates and discount rates.</p> <p>The assessment of the recoverable amount of the Cash Generating Unit ("CGU") required significant audit effort in the current year as it involves the evaluation of significant judgements about the future mine planning, capital expenditure and costs of mining for the CGU as well as various other assumptions that impact future cash flow forecasts.</p> | <p>Our audit procedures included critically assessing management's assumptions used in their Life of Mine plans, including challenging those assumptions by comparing them to historical data and applicable data available in the market to consider whether the assumptions fell within an acceptable range.</p> <p>In challenging these assumptions we paid particular attention to the discount rate, future metal prices, future exchange rates and expected inflation by involving our internal valuation specialists to the extent necessary.</p> <p>We assessed the historical accuracy of management's forecasts, particularly on costs, capital expenditure, and production achievements and compared current performance to forecasts. We critically evaluated future assumptions around production, resultant revenue, capital expenditure and cost forecasts.</p> <p>We also tested the mathematical accuracy of the models.</p> <p>We challenged management's sensitivity assessments and performed our own sensitivity calculations in respect of the key assumptions.</p> <p>We also considered the disclosures made by management on the key assumptions.</p> |
| <b>Physical quantities of inventory</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <p>As discussed in note 2.11 in the notes to the financial statements the Group and Company account for the four main platinum group metals, being platinum, palladium, rhodium and gold ("4E") as joint products inventory. Metal inventory is held in a wide variety of forms across the mining and refining processes, and is only physically separated at the very end of the refining process. Therefore physical quantities of metal inventory are determined by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>sampling and assays of the material in process;</li> <li>the historical head grade achieved per mine;</li> <li>various recovery factors at different stages in the process; and</li> <li>determination of the split of metals in such material.</li> </ul> <p>The volume of material can vary quite significantly in different measuring points in the pipeline and the impact of head grade changes can be material and as such the quantum of metal inventory requires a significant amount of estimation and management judgement in its determination. As a result, this was a key area of audit focus in the current year, particularly also as a build-up of inventory occurred during the year in anticipation of the commissioning of the new furnace.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <p>Our audit procedures included attendance at year-end physical inventory counts to observe how management and the specialists involved quantified the material. We considered the competence of the metallurgists and surveyors, the results of their reports, and sought to understand and corroborate the reasons for significant or unusual movements in inventory quantities. We also considered the various conversion factors to estimate material measured to contained metal in relation to historical achievements and our experience with the entity.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

## Other Information

The directors are responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the information included in the Integrated Report, which includes the Directors' Report, the Chairman's of the Audit and Risk Committee's letter and the Company Secretary's Certificate as required by the Companies Act of South Africa which we obtained prior to the date of this report, and the Integrated Report, which is expected to be made available to us after that date. Other information does not include the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements and our auditor's report thereon.

Our opinion on the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements or our knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed on the other information obtained prior to the date of this auditor's report, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. We have nothing to report in this regard.

When we read the Integrated Report, if we conclude that there is a material misstatement therein, we are required to communicate the matter to those charged with governance.

## Responsibilities of the Directors for the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements

The directors are responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards and the requirements of the Companies Act of South Africa, and for such internal control as the directors determine is necessary to enable the preparation of consolidated financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements, the directors are responsible for assessing the Group's ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless the directors either intend to liquidate the Group or to cease operations, or have no realistic alternative but to do so.

## Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with ISAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements.

As part of an audit in accordance with ISAs, we exercise professional judgement and maintain professional scepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.
- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Group's and the Company's internal control.
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by the directors.
- Conclude on the appropriateness of the directors' use of the going concern basis of accounting and based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the Group's and Company's ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists,

we are required to draw attention in our auditor's report to the related disclosures in the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor's report. However, future events or conditions may cause the Group and Company to cease to continue as a going concern.

- Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements, including the disclosures, and whether the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.
- Obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the financial information of the entities or business activities within the Group to express an opinion on the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements. We are responsible for the direction, supervision and performance of the Group audit. We remain solely responsible for our audit opinion.

We communicate with the directors regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

We also provide the Directors with a statement that we have complied with relevant ethical requirements regarding independence, and to communicate with them all relationships and other matters that may reasonably be thought to bear on our independence, and where applicable, related safeguards.

From the matters communicated with the directors, we determine those matters that were of most significance in the audit of the Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements of the current period and are therefore the key audit matters. We describe these matters in our auditor's report unless law or regulation precludes public disclosure about the matter or when, in extremely rare circumstances, we determine that a matter should not be communicated in our report because the adverse consequences of doing so would reasonably be expected to outweigh the public interest benefits of such communication.

## **Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements**

In terms of the IRBA Rule published in Government Gazette Number 39475 dated 04 December 2015, and subsequent guidance, we report that Ernst & Young Inc., and its predecessor firm, has been the auditor of Northam Platinum Limited for 33 years.

Ernst & Young Inc.  
Director: Mike Herbst  
Chartered Accountant (SA)  
Registered Auditor  
102 Rivonia Road, Sandton,  
Johannesburg, South Africa  
24 August 2017



# DIRECTORS' REPORT

*The directors have the pleasure in presenting the annual financial statements of Northam Platinum Limited group and company for the year ended 30 June 2017. In the context of the financial statements, the term group refers to the company, its subsidiaries, associate and joint ventures.*

## Financial results

The company and group financial results are included in this report. These annual financial statements have been prepared using appropriate accounting policies, in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) and the IFRS Interpretations Committee, the SAICA Financial Reporting Guidelines as issued by the Accounting Practices Committee, financial pronouncements as issued by the Financial Reporting Standards Council and the Companies Act 71 of 2008 (the Companies Act), the JSE Limited (JSE) Listing Requirements and include amounts based on judgements and estimates made by management.

The statements of financial position, statements of profit or loss and other comprehensive income, statements of cash flow and statements of changes in equity and notes to the annual financial statements reflect the financial results and position of the company and the group as at 30 June 2017.

These financial results are available on our website, [www.northam.co.za](http://www.northam.co.za).

## Nature of business

Northam Platinum Limited (Northam), is a public company incorporated in South Africa, and a leading supplier of platinum group metals (PGMs). Northam is listed on the JSE, trading under the share code NHM, ISIN code ZAE000030912 and for the Domestic Medium Term Notes (DMTN) programme, under the debt issuer code NHMI with the bond codes NHM002 and NHM003, ISIN code ZAG000129024 and ZAG000129032 respectively.

Northam is an independent, fully empowered, mid-tier, integrated PGM producer with two primary operating assets, Zondereinde and Booyssendal mines in the South African Bushveld Complex. During the year a third operation, Eland Platinum mine, was acquired. The necessary government approvals needed for the completion of the transaction are however still pending.

Below is a short description of the current operating assets:

### Booyssendal mine

The Booyssendal operations are located in the southern compartment of the eastern limb of the Bushveld Complex, situated approximately 35km from the town of Mashishing (formerly Lydenburg), straddling the border of Limpopo and Mpumalanga provinces in South Africa. The massive Booyssendal orebody is host to both the UG2 and Merensky reefs which outcrop over a strike length of 14.5km and dip westwards at approximately 10°.

The Booyssendal North UG2 mine is a shallow, mechanised room and pillar underground operation. The North shaft complex comprises four declines, three on reef and one in the reef footwall, which are accessed by a reverse decline system.

Surface metallurgical infrastructure includes a UG2 concentrator and a dense media separation plant. Concentrate is sold to Zondereinde and all material is smelted and further processed at Zondereinde.

At the North mine a shallow mechanised bord and pillar operation has also been developed on the Merensky reef horizon. This comprises two on-reef access declines.

The balance of the Booyssendal resource will be accessed through a number of decline systems being developed as part of the Booyssendal South project. These declines will target both the UG2 and Merensky reefs. Ore will be transported from a central point across the valley to the large capacity concentrator at the old Everest mine by a unique aerial rope conveying system. Other smaller projects to unlock value from the resources at the old Everest mine are being evaluated.

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Zondereinde mine

Zondereinde mine is located on the upper end of the western limb of the South African Bushveld Complex. Operational since 1993, the mine was established and continues to operate at steady state levels and remains cash generative and profitable producing some 280 000 ounces annually.

Underground mining activities focused on Merensky and UG2 reefs. The average depth of mining is at around 1 750m, which makes Zondereinde the deepest platinum mine in the world. Hydro powered equipment is used for stoping and development. Surface infrastructure includes separate concentrators for Merensky and UG2 ore, a base metals recovery plant and a smelter, with a new 20MW furnace currently being constructed. Marketing and sales activities are performed in-house to customers across the globe.

In October 2016, the company acquired additional PGM resources on both the Merensky and UG2 reefs from Anglo American Platinum's Tumela mine adjacent to Zondereinde's western boundary. These resources are not only expected to increase Zondereinde's economic life of mine but also to improve mining flexibility and the availability of Merensky reef.

## Mining licences

### Booyseendal mine

Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Northam, and holds two new order mining rights for the Booyseendal mine which covers an area of approximately 18 035 hectares on the farms Booyseendal 43 JT, Buttonshepe 51 JT, Der Brochen 7 JT, Draaikraal 48 JT, Hebron 5 JT, Hermansdal 3 JT, Kliprivier 73 JT, Pietersburg 44 JT, Uysedooms 47 JT, Johannesburg 45 JT, Sheeprun 50 JT, Sheeprun 179 JT, Sterkfontein 52 JT, De Kafferskraal 53 JT, Hoogland 38 JT and Sterkfontein 749 JT.

### Zondereinde mine

Northam holds two new order mining rights in respect of the Zondereinde mine covering an area of approximately 7 627 hectares on the farms Aapiesskraal 377 KQ, Amandelbult 383 KQ, Elandsfontein 386 KQ, Grootkuil 376 KQ, Kopje Alleen 422 KQ, Middeldrift 379 KQ, Vrugbaar 381 KQ, Vrugbaar 387 KQ, Witvley 423 KQ and Zondereinde 384 KQ.

On 10 October 2016, Northam entered into an agreement with Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited to acquire a portion of the Amandelbult mineral right and associated resource on the north-west boundary of Northam's Zondereinde mine for R1.0 billion cash. In addition Northam will also acquire the land overlying the resource, in exchange for the disposal of a portion of the current mining right.

Subsequent to year end, Ministerial Consent was obtained in terms of section 102 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002) (MPRDA).

### Eland Platinum mine

Northam announced on 24 February 2017, the acquisition of Eland Platinum mine from Glencore Operations South Africa Proprietary Limited for R175.0 million cash. As part of the acquisition Eland Platinum's two mining rights with resources estimated at 21.3 million 4E ounces with an average in situ grade of 4.4g/t will be acquired, as well as surface and underground infrastructure including a concentrator with a nameplate capacity of 250 000 per month, immovable property and a mining fleet in excess of 100 vehicles which includes low profile mechanised mining equipment.

In terms of the agreement Northam will be responsible for care and maintenance costs to the value of R50.0 million, between the date when the agreement was entered into and the date when all conditions precedent have been met.

There are a number of conditions precedent that must be met before the transaction becomes unconditional. The most significant include the consent from the Minister of Mineral Resources in terms of section 11 of the MPRDA.

## Mineral Resource and Reserve Statement

The latest mineral resource and reserve estimation will be published in the 2017 integrated annual report, due for publication end of September 2017.



# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Ordinary dividends

The company's dividend policy is to consider an interim and final dividend for each financial year. At its discretion, the board may consider a special dividend, where appropriate. Depending on the perceived need to retain funds for expansion or operating purposes, the board of directors (board) may pass the payment of dividends.

The quantum of any dividend would ultimately be subject to expected future market and capital commitments at the time of consideration by the board.

Given the continuing difficult conditions in the mining industry, and taking into consideration the cash requirements to fund the development of the group's project pipeline and growth strategy, the board has resolved not to declare a final dividend for the 2017 financial year (30 June 2016: R Nil).

## Associates and joint ventures

The group has an interest in the following entities and joint ventures:

### Dwaalkop joint venture

The Dwaalkop joint venture is a joint venture between Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited, a wholly owned subsidiary of Northam owning 50% and Western Platinum Proprietary Limited, a subsidiary of Lonmin plc (Lonmin), owning the other 50% with the joint venture being managed by Lonmin. The Dwaalkop asset is currently not being mined; however exploration is conducted on the property by Lonmin.

The carrying value of the group's investment remained unchanged at R136.2 million. Exploration costs regarding the Dwaalkop joint venture of R0.4 million (2016: R0.3 million) was incurred, which was charged to sundry expenditure.

### Pandora joint venture

Anglo American Platinum Limited, Eastern Platinum Limited, a subsidiary of Lonmin, and Northam entered into a 42.5%: 50%: 7.5% arrangement. In terms of the agreement, Anglo American Platinum Limited contributed certain mineral rights to the venture, while Eastern Platinum Limited contributed certain surface infrastructure. The venture has an operating mine in the Western Limb of the Bushveld Complex.

The investment was accounted for as an associate.

Northam has entered into an agreement to sell its 7.5% stake in the Pandora joint venture to Lonmin's Eastern Platinum Limited for a cash consideration of R45.6 million, announced on 15 May 2017.

Amongst other conditions precedent, the transaction is subject to consent from the Minister of Mineral Resources in terms of section 11 of the MPRDA and approval from Lonmin's lending banks. The transaction is expected to become unconditional in the 2017 calendar year following the fulfilment of all conditions precedent.

Pandora has a September year-end. IAS 28 requires that an entity applies IFRS 5 Non-current Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operation to an investment in an associate or joint venture that meets the criteria to be classified as held for sale. Per the requirements included in IFRS 5, an investor discontinues the use of the equity method from the date that the investment is classified as held for sale, and instead, the associate or joint venture is then measured at the lower of its carrying amount and fair value less cost to sell. The equity accounting in the prior year was based on reviewed results for the 12 months ended 30 June 2016.

Northam classified the investment as a non-current asset held for sale effective 1 July 2016.

As part of the agreement with Lonmin's Eastern Platinum Limited the amount of any cash calls paid by Northam to the Pandora joint venture during the period 1 January 2017 to completion of the transaction, will be refunded, provided that such cash calls do not exceed an amount of R50.0 million. To date cash calls to the value of R3.7 million have been paid in terms of the arrangement, with an additional amount of R1.1 million being called upon subsequent to year-end.

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Trans Hex Group Limited

Trans Hex Group Limited is a diamond producing and marketing company. The group held a 20.3% interest in Trans Hex Group Limited which was sold during the prior year.

## SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited

SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited provides security services to all of the groups operations.

Northam holds 30% (2016: 20%) of the issued share capital of SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited through a wholly owned subsidiary, Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited.

## Stated capital

There were no changes during the current financial year, to the authorised or issued stated capital of the company. The authorised stated capital of the company as at 30 June 2017 amounted to 2 000 000 000 shares (2016: 2 000 000 000 shares) at no par value. The issued stated capital of the company remained unchanged at 509 781 212 shares.

In terms of the Northam Black Economic Empowerment transaction (BEE transaction) 112 195 122 shares, equivalent to 22.0% of Northam's issued stated capital, were allotted and issued to Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited in May 2015. Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited holds 159 905 453 Northam shares in total. These shares are treated as treasury shares for accounting purposes.

## Repurchase of issued shares

At the annual general meeting (AGM) held on 9 November 2016 shareholders approved a special resolution granting a general authority for the repurchase of ordinary shares by the company (or any one of its wholly owned subsidiaries), subject to the JSE listings requirements and the provisions of the Companies Act. No shares were repurchased in the current or prior year. This general authority is valid until the company's next AGM or for 15 months from the date of the aforementioned resolution (being 9 February 2018) whichever period is the shorter. Approval to renew this general authority will be sought at the AGM to be held on Tuesday, 7 November 2017.

## Borrowing powers

In terms of the Memorandum of Incorporation (MOI) the directors may borrow for purposes of the company, such sums as they deem fit. Below is a summary of the various loans and borrowings:

## Revolving Credit Facility (RCF)

During the year the Nedbank Limited five year R1.5 billion revolving credit facility was renegotiated. This replaced the previous R1.0 billion facility which matured in November 2016.

The new facility strengthens Northam's balance sheet capability in support of the group's key strategic initiatives, including the development of the Booyssendal expansion projects. Together with existing cash reserves, the new facility provides Northam with increased financial flexibility, ensuring that the group's growth initiatives remain fully funded in the medium-term.

The salient terms of the new facility are as follows: Five-year senior unsecured revolving credit facility, with a facility limit of R1.0 billion for the first 18 months from inception, where after the new facility limit automatically increases to R1.5 billion for the remainder of the five year period and voluntary prepayments and redraws are permitted.

There have been no drawings from this facility between the reporting date and the date of this report.

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Domestic Medium Term Debt Notes (DMTN)

During the previous year Northam issued R175.0 million five-year senior unsecured fixed rate notes. The notes bear a fixed coupon of 13.50% per annum, payable semi-annually, and will be redeemed on 12 May 2021. The proceeds further strengthens Northam's statement of financial position and be applied to the development of the company's project pipeline.

On 9 June 2016, the Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa Limited subscribed for R250.0 million three-year senior unsecured floating rate notes under the DMTN programme. The notes attract a floating coupon rate of 3 month JIBAR plus 390 basis points and will mature on 9 June 2019. The proceeds is applied for the development of the Booysendal expansion project.

These notes were issued under the R2.0 billion DMTN programme dated 3 August 2012.

During the prior year notes to the value of R1.37 billion were fully repaid on 4 September 2015. These notes related to notes issued on 3 September 2012 for R1.25 billion through the issue of senior unsecured floating rate notes, in terms of the company's R2.0 billion DMTN programme dated 3 August 2012. On 11 July 2013, a further R120.0 million was raised in the domestic capital market through the DMTN programme. These funds were used for the development of the Booysendal mine, the deepening project at the Zondereinde mine and other operational and working capital requirements of the group.

## Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV

A wholly owned subsidiary, Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited previously arranged a loan facility with the *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV* to fund the sale of houses to employees in terms of the group's affordable housing initiative. During the current financial year, the loan was repaid in full due to the restrictive requirements placed by the *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV* which was not conducive to achieving the housing strategy of the group.

Details of the above mentioned borrowings including interest rates, terms and conditions are included in the notes to the annual financial statements.

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Financial assistance

Under the Companies Act, inter group loans; guarantees and other financial assistance require approval of shareholders by a special resolution.

According to section 45 of the Companies Act, the board may not authorise a company to provide any financial assistance to a related or inter related company (which includes a loan by a holding company to a subsidiary or to a director or prescribed officer of the company) unless the particular provision of financial assistance is pursuant to a special resolution of the shareholders, adopted within the previous two years, which approved such assistance either for a specific recipient, or generally for a category of potential recipients, and the specific recipient falls within that category.

In addition, before authorising any such financial assistance, the board must be satisfied that: immediately after providing the financial assistance, the company would satisfy the solvency and liquidity test; and the terms upon which the financial assistance is proposed to be given are fair and reasonable to the company.

## Financial assistance to subsidiary companies

At the date of this report Northam had granted the following financial assistance to its subsidiaries:

|                                                                                               | Approved<br>facility<br>2017 | Changes in<br>the coming<br>year<br>2018 | New loan<br>facility<br>to be<br>granted<br>2018 | Balance<br>2017 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
|                                                                                               | R000                         | R000                                     | R000                                             | R000            |
| Boysendal Platinum Proprietary Limited*                                                       | 3 470 000                    | (3 470 000)                              | –                                                | 1 720 088       |
| Boysendal Platinum Proprietary Limited loan advanced by Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited* | 3 400 000                    | (3 400 000)                              | –                                                | –               |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited                                                       | 88 300                       | 50 000                                   | 138 300                                          | 81 893          |
| Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited*                                                   | 15 800                       | (15 800)                                 | –                                                | 9 689           |
| Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited                                                     | 42 000                       | 24 680                                   | 66 680                                           | –               |
| Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited                                                 | 20 000                       | 50 000                                   | 70 000                                           | 26 543          |
| Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited*                                                         | 1                            | (1)                                      | –                                                | –               |
| Total loan facilities                                                                         | 7 036 101                    | (6 761 121)                              | 274 980                                          | 1 838 213       |

\*These loans will no longer be required, as these loans have either been capitalised or are in the process of being capitalised as part of the restructuring of the group.

|                                                         | Approved<br>facility<br>2017 | Changes in<br>the coming<br>year<br>2018 | New loan<br>facility<br>to be<br>granted<br>2018 | Balance<br>2017 |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
|                                                         | USD000                       | USD000                                   | USD000                                           | USD000          |
| Northam Platinum Investments (US) Inc. and subsidiaries | –                            | 25 000                                   | 25 000                                           | –               |
| Total loan facilities                                   | –                            | 25 000                                   | 25 000                                           | –               |

With the acquisition of the assets and properties of A-1 Specialized Services Inc, announced on 28 July 2017, located in the state of Pennsylvania, United States of America, a number of foreign subsidiaries are in the process of being incorporated and funding will be required for the operational requirements during the start up phase.

## DIRECTORS REPORT continued

|                                                                                                | Approved<br>facility<br>2016 | Changes in<br>the coming<br>year<br>2017 | New loan<br>facility<br>to be<br>granted<br>2017 | Balance<br>2016 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
|                                                                                                | R000                         | R000                                     | R000                                             | R000            |
| Booyesendal Platinum Proprietary Limited                                                       | 4 970 000                    | (1 500 000)                              | 3 470 000                                        | 2 262 163       |
| Booyesendal Platinum Proprietary Limited loan advanced by Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited | 3 400 000                    | –                                        | 3 400 000                                        | 2 355 843       |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited – fixed term loan                                      | 34 300                       | –                                        | 34 300                                           | 24 456          |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited – general loan                                         | 44 000                       | 10 000                                   | 54 000                                           | 37 724          |
| Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited                                                     | 15 800                       | –                                        | 15 800                                           | 14 590          |
| Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited                                                      | 42 000                       | –                                        | 42 000                                           | 1 047           |
| Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited                                                  | 20 000                       | –                                        | 20 000                                           | 15 002          |
| Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited                                                           | 1                            | –                                        | 1                                                | 1               |
| Total loan facilities                                                                          | 8 526 101                    | (1 490 000)                              | 7 036 101                                        | 4 710 826       |

Below are the various guarantees issued together with the additional guarantees which will be tabled at the forthcoming AGM:

|                                                                                               | Current<br>guarantee<br>2017 | Additional<br>amount to be<br>guaranteed<br>in the<br>coming year<br>2018 | Total<br>guarantee to<br>be granted<br>2017 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                               | R000                         | R000                                                                      | R000                                        |
| Northam Platinum Limited guarantee to Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited                           | 7 535 944                    | –                                                                         | 7 535 944                                   |
| Booyesendal Platinum Proprietary Limited guarantee to Northam Platinum Limited                | 3 500 000                    | –                                                                         | 3 500 000                                   |
| Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited guarantee to Northam Platinum Limited                    | 3 500 000                    | (3 500 000)                                                               | –                                           |
| Northam Platinum Limited subordination agreement to Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited | 56 680                       | 15 000                                                                    | 71 680                                      |
| Total guarantee                                                                               | 14 592 624                   | (3 485 000)                                                               | 11 107 624                                  |

|                                                                                               | Current<br>guarantee<br>2016 | Additional<br>amount to be<br>guaranteed<br>in the<br>coming year<br>2017 | Total<br>guarantee to<br>be granted<br>2016 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                               | R000                         | R000                                                                      | R000                                        |
| Northam Platinum Limited guarantee to Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited                           | 7 535 944                    | –                                                                         | 7 535 944                                   |
| Booyesendal Platinum Proprietary Limited guarantee to Northam Platinum Limited                | 3 000 000                    | 500 000                                                                   | 3 500 000                                   |
| Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited guarantee to Northam Platinum Limited                    | 3 000 000                    | 500 000                                                                   | 3 500 000                                   |
| Northam Platinum Limited subordination agreement to Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited | 41 680                       | 15 000                                                                    | 56 680                                      |
| Total guarantee                                                                               | 13 577 624                   | 1 015 000                                                                 | 14 592 624                                  |

Northam guaranteed the preference shareholders in Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited that in the event that Zambezi does not have the means to settle the liability in 2025, after realising their investment in Northam Platinum Limited. At year end the liability was R8.6 billion and the fair value of the investment in Northam was R6.4 billion, leaving an exposure under this guarantee at year end of R2.2 billion (2016: R771.0 million).

The Booyesendal Platinum Proprietary Limited guarantee, as well as the Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited guarantee to Northam Platinum Limited relate to both the Revolving Credit facility as well as the Domestic Medium Term Debt Note facility. With the collapse of Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited from the group structure, these guarantees will no longer be required.

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited

Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited (Zambezi) was established as a special purpose vehicle by Northam, with the principal objective of ensuring BEE compliance.

Zambezi was incorporated on 2 June 2014. The company was created for the purpose of assisting Northam to comply with the Historically Disadvantaged South African (HDSA) ownership requirements set by the Mining Charter.

Zambezi holds 159 905 453 Northam shares which amounts to approximately 31.4% of the total issued ordinary stated capital of Northam.

Zambezi is a ring-fenced entity created for the specific purpose of raising funds and to hold Northam shares. As such, Zambezi will not be conducting any other business activities until the expiry of the lock-in period (which is 10 years from May 2015). At the end of the 10-year period, Zambezi is required to redeem the preference shares with cash or Northam shares. All amounts payable to the holders of the preference shares are guaranteed by Northam in terms of the transactional agreements. Further, Northam is required to settle the operational expenses of Zambezi, subject to certain limitations.

Zambezi's prospects are therefore limited in nature in that they are dependent on the prospects of Northam and the returns attributable to the preference shares are constant and fluctuate only in accordance with prevailing interest rates. Various characteristics of the preference shares, such as the Northam guarantee and redemption payment structure, provide the holders with additional certainty regarding the recoverability of their dividends and capital.

However, the preference shares retain equity risk as a result of their redemption being ultimately supported by the value of Northam shares and/or Northam's ability to continue as a going concern. The preference shares therefore present their holders with a combination of the risks and rewards associated with equity and debt instruments.

Northam's prospects for growth and continued profitability are subject to various external and internal factors which cannot be accurately predicted, forecasted or controlled by Zambezi as an investor in Northam.

The redemption of the preference shares is planned to occur through cash accumulation from dividends received from Northam, and after the lock-in the possible sell-off of Northam shares into the market to realise the capital value, to redeem the preference shares. In the event that this is not sufficient to settle the liability, it will be secured by Northam in terms of a financial guarantee (Northam guarantee).

Should a liability arise under the Northam guarantee, Northam may settle this liability by capitalising Zambezi with cash and/or Northam shares before the redemption amount becomes due or making payment directly to the preference shareholders. The manner of settlement is not contractually specified. Therefore should the Northam share price not increase in value from the 10 year lock in period there could be a significant dilution in value for all Northam shareholders, should additional shares be issued to the preference shareholders.

Included in the financial statements of Northam is a guarantee of R7.5 billion, based on the initial recognition fair value, that was issued based on the above.

During the year Northam acquired 4 202 454 Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares in the open market. See note 9 of the financial statements for more details.

## Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited

Northam currently has finance facilities available in the form of a revolving credit facility of R1.0 billion with Nedbank Limited, and has issued R425.0 million on the debt capital market. Booyseendal has signed a letter of guarantee with regards to both these facilities.

There is currently also an interest free loan between Northam and Booyseendal, which is being settled as and when cash is available. Northam is in the process of streamlining the group structure and will eliminate the intermediate holding company, Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited (Khumama) between Northam and Booyseendal. This process was not completed by year-end. Subsequent to year-end, Khumama will be liquidated and the loan between Northam and Booyseendal will be capitalised.



# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited

With the acquisition of the Booyseendal mineral rights, the statutory entity Booyseendal together with its holding company Khumama were also acquired. A loan was issued to Booyseendal by Khumama amounting to R2.4 billion. This loan was interest free and had no fixed terms of repayment and has remained unchanged for several years. During the current year, this loan was capitalised in full as part of the clean up of the group structure.

Khumama was also a party to the guarantees that have been issued in terms of the DMTN facility.

The Noteholders' consent to remove Khumama as a guarantor was obtained.

Khumama is for all intents and purposes a dormant private company. Khumama will be placed in voluntary winding-up in accordance with section 80 of the Companies Act following the unbundling by Khumama of its shares in Booyseendal to Northam. Booyseendal will continue as a wholly owned subsidiary of Northam and a guarantor pursuant to the amended and Restated Applicable Pricing Supplements relating to the issued notes. The amendment will simplify Northam's group structure and remove administration costs associated with Khumama going forward.

## Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited – fixed term loan

In terms of the agreement with the *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV*, Northam Platinum Limited was previously required to fund 30% of house sales values and debt consolidation amounts, and as such the fixed-term intercompany loan could not be repaid until such time as the loan from the *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV* was repaid in full. Accordingly a fixed term loan facility of R34.3 million, of which R24.4 million was utilised, repayable in September 2026, was previously granted by Northam to Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited, at an interest rate of 2.0% below prime.

During the year, the loan outstanding to the *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV* was settled in full and the fixed term loan is therefore no longer required. The fixed term loan was consolidated with the general loan facility.

## Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited – general loan (consolidated loan in the current year)

Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited is a company which holds and operates one of Zondereinde mine's employee home ownership projects (Mojuteng project) in the town of Northam, approximately 22 kilometres from Zondereinde. Assisting Northam Platinum Limited to comply with its homeowner strategy.

The general loan accrues no interest and is repayable on demand.

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited

Northam acquired Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited (Windfall) during the 2010 financial year. In the same year, Windfall purchased certain freehold property for the purposes of the Booyssendal mine, at a cost of R12.9 million. The consideration was funded by a loan from Northam. During the 2012 financial year further freehold land was purchased at an additional cost of R2.1 million.

The fixed-term loan agreement with Northam incurred an interest rate of 2.0% below prime. A long-term lease agreement with Booyssendal over the agricultural land was also entered into. All amounts received in terms of the long-term lease agreement were used as repayments on the outstanding loan balance. The lease commenced on 1 July 2012 and was planned to terminate on 30 June 2037. The lease was however cancelled during the current year.

Windfall will be liquidated in terms of section 45 of the Income Tax Act, whereby: a company distributes all of its assets to another company that is part of the same group of companies for tax purposes, in anticipation of its liquidation, winding up or deregistration. Both the properties and outstanding loan balances will be transferred to Booyssendal. The property transfers were all concluded subsequent to year-end.

## Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited

On 25 September 2014 Northam provided a guarantee to ensure that Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited would meet its financial obligations as and when they fall due as the company's liabilities exceeded its assets. The guarantee will remain in full force and effect as long as the liabilities (including contingent liabilities) exceed its assets, fairly valued, and will lapse forthwith upon the date that the assets, so valued, exceed its liabilities.

## Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited

Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited (MTS) provides services to the group. These services are charged out to both Zondereinde and Booyssendal operations in December and June of every year. Northam previously provided a loan to MTS for the investment in SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited. The loan is interest free and has no fixed terms of repayment. However during the year repayments were made on the outstanding balance.

## Financial assistance to executive directors and/or prescribed officers of the company

At the board meeting held in February 2015, the board approved the Northam 2020 accommodation strategy (accommodation strategy).

One of the funding mechanisms of the accommodation strategy is the provision of a 10-year interest free loan repayable over a maximum period of 20 years. The loan value is linked to seniority and is expressed as a percentage of a permissible bonded amount. Repayments are made through payroll deductions.

Going forward, in order to enable the executive directors and/or prescribed officers to benefit from the accommodation strategy, it will be necessary to comply with the financial assistance provisions of the Companies Act. Approval will therefore be sought at the upcoming AGM, to authorise the company to make loans to executive directors and/or prescribed officers and persons related or inter-related to them in terms of the accommodation strategy, up to a maximum of R600 000 per executive director and/or prescribed officer.

## Solvency and liquidity test

Taking into account, the twelve-month cash flow forecasts (including the letter of support/guarantees issued), the board has assessed that the various statutory entities will continue as going concerns for the foreseeable future.

The company therefore believes that it has satisfied the solvency and liquidity test, as contemplated in section 45 of the Companies Act and detailed in section 4 of the Act, and determined that post such assistance the company was solvent and liquid and the terms under which this assistance was provided were fair and reasonable to the company.

## Dematerialisation of shares (share transactions totally electronic) STRATE

Shareholders who have not already dematerialised their shares (certificated shareholders) are once again urged to do so as soon as possible (unless it is their explicit intention not to do so) in order to enable them to trade in such shares. It is most important for certificated shareholders to note that their shares may not be traded on the JSE unless the shares have been dematerialised.

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Directorate

At the date of this report the board comprised the following directors;

| Director     | Position                           | First appointed | Standing for re-election and election | Elected or re-elected at the last AGM |
|--------------|------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| PL Zim       | Non-executive chairman             | 25 April 2007   | N/A                                   | ✓                                     |
| R Havenstein | Lead independent director          | 1 July 2003     | ✓                                     | N/A                                   |
| PA Dunne     | Chief executive officer            | 1 March 2014    | N/A                                   | N/A                                   |
| AZ Khumalo   | Chief financial officer            | 1 July 2010     | N/A                                   | N/A                                   |
| CK Chabedi   | Independent non-executive director | 22 June 2009    | N/A                                   | ✓                                     |
| HH Hickey    | Independent non-executive director | 1 January 2016  | N/A                                   | ✓                                     |
| TE Kgosi     | Independent non-executive director | 1 November 2004 | ✓                                     | N/A                                   |
| KB Mosehla   | Non-executive director             | 19 August 2015  | ✓                                     | N/A                                   |
| TI Mvusi     | Independent non-executive director | 1 January 2016  | N/A                                   | ✓                                     |
| JG Smithies  | Independent non-executive director | 1 January 2017  | ✓                                     | N/A                                   |

Mr JG Smithies was appointed as an independent non-executive director on 1 January 2017.

Mr AR Martin retired from the board of directors at the conclusion of the AGM held on 9 November 2016. Ms HH Hickey has replaced Mr Martin as chairman of the audit and risk committee on 9 November 2016.

Ms PB Beale is the company secretary.

## Board diversity

| Gender | 2017 | 2016 |
|--------|------|------|
| Male   | 80%  | 80%  |
| Female | 20%  | 20%  |

| Nationality            | 2017 | 2016 |
|------------------------|------|------|
| Black South African    | 6    | 6    |
| Coloured South African | –    | 1    |
| Indian South Africa    | –    | –    |
| White South African    | 2    | 2    |
| Non-South African      | 2    | 1    |

| Independence              | 2017 | 2016 |
|---------------------------|------|------|
| Executive                 | 2    | 2    |
| Non-executive             | 2    | 2    |
| Independent non-executive | 6    | 6    |

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Directors' fees

In terms of the MOI the fees for services as directors are determined by the company and approved at the AGM.

It is proposed to increase certain fees of non-executive directors by an average of 8.0% per annum in line with market norms.

However, the SE&HR committee commissioned an independent firm in 2016 to conduct a benchmarking exercise on non-executive directors' fees against a peer group of JSE mining companies. The results indicated that the majority of directors are paid within acceptable ranges to the median; however, some of the directors' fees lag the market considerably. In an attempt to ensure internal parity, it is proposed fees for these directors are adjusted by 10%. In considering the adjustment, affordability was considered.

At the forthcoming AGM members will accordingly be requested to consider a special resolution providing for the increase in the fees for the year ending 30 June 2018 as set out below:

|                                                                 | Proposed fee 2018<br>AGM (per annum) | Approved fee at<br>the previous AGM<br>(per annum) |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                 | R                                    | R                                                  |
| <b>Board</b>                                                    |                                      |                                                    |
| Board chairperson                                               | 402 800                              | 366 100                                            |
| Lead independent director                                       | 349 700                              | 323 600                                            |
| Board members                                                   | 307 000                              | 284 100                                            |
| <b>Audit and Risk committee</b>                                 |                                      |                                                    |
| Committee chairperson                                           | 189 000                              | 171 800                                            |
| Committee members                                               | 148 400                              | 137 300                                            |
| <b>Health, Safety and Environmental committee</b>               |                                      |                                                    |
| Committee chairperson                                           | 133 160                              | 121 000                                            |
| Committee members                                               | 100 600                              | 92 900                                             |
| <b>Social, ethics and human resources committee (SE&amp;HR)</b> |                                      |                                                    |
| Committee chairperson                                           | 134 640                              | 122 400                                            |
| Committee members                                               | 100 600                              | 92 900                                             |
| <b>Nomination committee</b>                                     |                                      |                                                    |
| Committee chairperson                                           | 77 400                               | 70 300                                             |
| Committee members                                               | 47 500                               | 43 100                                             |
| <b>Other board appointed committees</b>                         |                                      |                                                    |
| Committee chairperson                                           | 112 310                              | 102 100                                            |
| Committee members                                               | 82 300                               | 76 000                                             |
| Ad hoc fees - per hour                                          | 3 630                                | 3 360                                              |

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Directors' remuneration

The directors' remuneration for the year ended 30 June 2017 is as follows:

|                      | Fees  | Re-muneration package | Performance bonus | Benefits | Gain on share based payments | Total  |
|----------------------|-------|-----------------------|-------------------|----------|------------------------------|--------|
|                      | R000  | R000                  | R000              | R000     | R000                         | R000   |
| <b>Executive</b>     |       |                       |                   |          |                              |        |
| PA Dunne             | –     | 7 291                 | 6 217             | 191      | –                            | 13 699 |
| AZ Khumalo           | –     | 3 555                 | 3 018             | 168      | 3 158                        | 9 899  |
| <b>Non-executive</b> |       |                       |                   |          |                              |        |
| PL Zim               | 409   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 409    |
| R Havenstein         | 825   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 825    |
| CK Chabedi           | 624   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 624    |
| HH Hickey            | 418   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 418    |
| TE Kgosi             | 732   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 732    |
| AR Martin*           | 245   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 245    |
| KB Mosehla           | 515   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 515    |
| TI Mvusi             | 284   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 284    |
| JS Smithies**        | 164   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 164    |
|                      | 4 216 | 10 846                | 9 235             | 359      | 3 158                        | 27 814 |

The directors' remuneration for the year ended 30 June 2016 is as follows:

|                      | Fees  | Re-muneration package | Performance bonus | Benefits | Gain on share based payments | Total  |
|----------------------|-------|-----------------------|-------------------|----------|------------------------------|--------|
|                      | R000  | R000                  | R000              | R000     | R000                         | R000   |
| <b>Executive</b>     |       |                       |                   |          |                              |        |
| PA Dunne             | –     | 6 165                 | 4 353             | 834      | –                            | 11 352 |
| AZ Khumalo           | –     | 3 006                 | 2 436             | 441      | 3 707                        | 9 590  |
| <b>Non-executive</b> |       |                       |                   |          |                              |        |
| PL Zim               | 412   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 412    |
| R Havenstein         | 717   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 717    |
| CK Chabedi           | 496   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 496    |
| HH Hickey***         | 209   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 209    |
| TE Kgosi             | 609   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 609    |
| AR Martin            | 565   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 565    |
| KB Mosehla           | 357   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 357    |
| TI Mvusi***          | 154   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 154    |
| ME Beckett****       | 247   | –                     | –                 | –        | –                            | 247    |
|                      | 3 766 | 9 171                 | 6 789             | 1 275    | 3 707                        | 24 708 |

\* Mr Martin retired from the board of directors at the conclusion of the AGM on 9 November 2016.

\*\* Mr Smithies was appointed as an independent non-executive director on 1 January 2017.

\*\*\* Mrs Hickey and Mr Mvusi were appointed as independent non-executive directors on 1 January 2016.

\*\*\*\* Mr Beckett retired from the board of directors on 11 November 2015.

## DIRECTORS REPORT continued

An analysis of the non-executive fees in respect of the board and board committee services for the 30 June 2017 financial year is as follows:

|              | Board | Audit and risk committee | Health, safety and environmental committee | Investment committee | Social, ethics and human resources committee | Nominations committee | Ad hoc fees | Total |
|--------------|-------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------|-------|
|              | R000  | R000                     | R000                                       | R000                 | R000                                         | R000                  | R000        | R000  |
| PL Zim       | 366   | –                        | –                                          | –                    | –                                            | 43                    | –           | 409   |
| R Havenstein | 367   | 137                      | 121                                        | 86                   | –                                            | 87                    | 27          | 825   |
| CK Chabedi   | 327   | –                        | 93                                         | 76                   | 128                                          | –                     | –           | 624   |
| HH Hickey    | 284   | 134                      | –                                          | –                    | –                                            | –                     | –           | 418   |
| TE Kgosi     | 327   | 138                      | –                                          | –                    | 157                                          | 60                    | 50          | 732   |
| AR Martin    | 115   | 91                       | –                                          | 11                   | –                                            | 28                    | –           | 245   |
| KB Mosehla   | 327   | –                        | –                                          | 60                   | 128                                          | –                     | –           | 515   |
| TI Mvusi     | 284   | –                        | –                                          | –                    | –                                            | –                     | –           | 284   |
| JS Smithies  | 164   | –                        | –                                          | –                    | –                                            | –                     | –           | 164   |
|              | 2 561 | 500                      | 214                                        | 233                  | 413                                          | 218                   | 77          | 4 216 |

An analysis of the non-executive fees in respect of the board and board committee services for the 30 June 2016 financial year is as follows:

|              | Board | Audit and risk committee | Health, safety and environmental committee | Investment committee | Social, ethics and human resources committee | Nominations committee | Ad hoc fees | Total |
|--------------|-------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------|-------|
|              | R000  | R000                     | R000                                       | R000                 | R000                                         | R000                  | R000        | R000  |
| PL Zim       | 340   | –                        | –                                          | –                    | –                                            | 72                    | –           | 412   |
| R Havenstein | 300   | 129                      | 112                                        | 80                   | 3                                            | 93                    | –           | 717   |
| CK Chabedi   | 268   | –                        | 87                                         | 56                   | 85                                           | –                     | –           | 496   |
| HH Hickey    | 154   | 55                       | –                                          | –                    | –                                            | –                     | –           | 209   |
| TE Kgosi     | 268   | 129                      | –                                          | –                    | 113                                          | 72                    | 27          | 609   |
| AR Martin    | 273   | 160                      | –                                          | 56                   | –                                            | 76                    | –           | 565   |
| KB Mosehla   | 219   | –                        | –                                          | 53                   | 85                                           | –                     | –           | 357   |
| TI Mvusi     | 154   | –                        | –                                          | –                    | –                                            | –                     | –           | 154   |
| ME Beckett   | 108   | 72                       | 42                                         | –                    | 25                                           | –                     | –           | 247   |
|              | 2 084 | 545                      | 241                                        | 245                  | 311                                          | 313                   | 27          | 3 766 |

### Service contracts

Mr PA Dunne, the chief executive officer, has a service contract with the company, which is subject to a notice period of 1 year. Mr AZ Khumalo, the chief financial officer, has a service contract with the company, which is subject to a notice period of three months.

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Directors' interest

According to information available to the company after reasonable enquiry, the interests of the directors and their families in the shares of the company at 30 June 2017 were as follows:

|             | Direct beneficial holding | Indirect beneficial holding | Total      |
|-------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|
| PA Dunne    | 26 050                    | –                           | 26 050     |
| AZ Khumalo  | 12 500                    | –                           | 12 500     |
| KB Mosehla  | –                         | 64 000                      | 64 000     |
| KB Mosehla* | –                         | 5 116 974                   | 5 116 974  |
| CK Chabedi* | –                         | 204 000                     | 204 000    |
| TE Kgosi*   | –                         | 635 000                     | 635 000    |
| PL Zim*     | –                         | 17 547 097                  | 17 547 097 |
|             | 38 550                    | 23 567 071                  | 23 605 621 |

The interests of the directors and their families in the shares of the company at 30 June 2016 were as follows:

|             | Direct beneficial holding | Indirect beneficial holding | Total      |
|-------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|
| AZ Khumalo  | 7 500                     | –                           | 7 500      |
| KB Mosehla  | –                         | 64 000                      | 64 000     |
| KB Mosehla* | –                         | 5 116 974                   | 5 116 974  |
| CK Chabedi* | –                         | 204 000                     | 204 000    |
| TE Kgosi*   | –                         | 635 000                     | 635 000    |
| PL Zim*     | –                         | 17 547 097                  | 17 547 097 |
|             | 7 500                     | 23 567 071                  | 23 574 571 |

*\* Pursuant to the Northam BEE transaction, Mr Chabedi, Ms Kgosi, Mr Mosehla and Mr Zim acquired beneficial interests in the ordinary share capital of Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited. This resulted in them and their associates acquiring an effective interest in Northam shares.*

At 30 June 2017, Mr Khumalo also held 500 Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares (2016: 500 preference shares).

There have been no changes in these holdings from 30 June 2017 to the date of the annual financial statements.



# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Analysis of shareholders

| Shareholding range  | Number of<br>shareholders | Total of shareholding | Percentage holding<br>(%) |
|---------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
|                     | 2017                      | 2017                  | 2017                      |
| 1 – 5 000           | 4 293                     | 3 298 030             | 0.65                      |
| 5 001 – 10 100      | 228                       | 1 692 532             | 0.33                      |
| 10 001 – 50 000     | 331                       | 7 755 452             | 1.52                      |
| 50 001 – 100 000    | 104                       | 7 689 199             | 1.51                      |
| 100 001 – 1 000 000 | 248                       | 78 404 892            | 15.38                     |
| 1 000 001 and more  | 66                        | 410 941 107           | 80.61                     |
|                     | 5 270                     | 509 781 212           | 100.00                    |

| Geographical analysis of shareholders | Total shareholding | Percentage holding<br>(%) |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
|                                       | 2017               | 2017                      |
| Australasia                           | 96 927             | 0.02                      |
| Europe and United Kingdom             | 5 640 752          | 1.11                      |
| North America                         | 29 971 495         | 5.88                      |
| Far East                              | 61 676             | 0.01                      |
| South Africa                          | 467 262 948        | 91.66                     |
| Other                                 | 6 747 414          | 1.32                      |
|                                       | 509 781 212        | 100.00                    |

| Major shareholders            | Number of shares | Percentage holding<br>(%) |
|-------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
|                               | 2017             | 2017                      |
| <b>Owner</b>                  |                  |                           |
| Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited | 159 905 453      | 31.37                     |
| <b>Fund manager</b>           |                  |                           |
| Coronation Asset Management   | 144 189 262      | 28.28                     |
| Public Investment Corporation | 51 392 191       | 10.08                     |
| Foord Asset Management        | 22 912 956       | 4.49                      |
| Kagiso Asset Management       | 21 123 736       | 4.14                      |
| Clients of Allan Gray         | 16 868 031       | 3.31                      |

| Shareholder spread            | Number of<br>shareholders | Percentage holding<br>(%) |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
|                               | 2017                      | 2017                      |
| Public                        | 5 263                     | 68.61                     |
| Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited | 1                         | 31.37                     |
| Directors                     | 6                         | 0.02                      |
|                               | 5 270                     | 100.0                     |

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Northam Share Option Scheme (the scheme)

The scheme was established on 4 January 1995 with the objective of attracting and retaining employees with appropriate levels of ability and expertise who make a significant contribution to the operations of the group.

The scheme was discontinued in 2011 owing to its dilutionary nature, although share options issued before its discontinuance will be allowed to run their course until 2017.

Options were offered at the volume weighted average price at which Northam shares traded on the JSE on the trading day immediately preceding the offer date. Options not exercised within seven years of the offer date shall lapse.

In March 2013 the JSE approved a change to the rules of the scheme in terms of which option holders may elect, at the time of exercising their option, to receive either the shares over which an option has been granted or a cash payment equivalent to the difference between the volume weighted average price at which Northam shares traded on the day preceding the exercise date and the exercise price.

A summary of the options held at 30 June 2017 is as follows:

| Earliest and latest exercise date                                  | Price per share in R | Total number of options |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 5 November 2011 and 4 November 2016                                | 36.95                | 265 000                 |
| 12 October 2012 and 11 October 2017                                | 46.57                | 1 795 000               |
| Claw back rights options                                           | 40.00                | 80 767                  |
| Number of options held at 30 June 2016                             |                      | 2 140 767               |
| Number of options forfeited during the year                        |                      | (12 997)                |
| Number of options exercised during the year – cash settled options |                      | (1 917 332)             |
| Number of options held at 30 June 2017                             |                      | 210 438                 |

At 30 June 2017 the outstanding options were exercisable as follows:

| Earliest and latest exercise date   | Price per share in R | Total number of options | Options | Options vested at 30 June 2017 at claw back offer price of R40.00 |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12 October 2012 and 11 October 2017 | 46.57                | 210 438                 | 202 500 | 7 938                                                             |
|                                     |                      | 210 438                 | 202 500 | 7 938                                                             |

## DIRECTORS REPORT continued

A summary of the options held at 30 June 2016 is as follows:

| Earliest and latest exercise date                                  | Price per share in R | Total number of options |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 27 November 2010 and 26 November 2015                              | 32.38                | 70 000                  |
| 5 November 2011 and 4 November 2016                                | 36.95                | 380 000                 |
| 1 July 2012 and 30 June 2017                                       | 45.59                | 125 000                 |
| 12 October 2012 and 11 October 2017                                | 46.57                | 2 050 000               |
| Claw back rights options                                           | 40.00                | 102 916                 |
| Number of options held at 30 June 2015                             |                      | 2 727 916               |
| Number of options forfeited during the year                        |                      | (337 740)               |
| Number of options exercised during the year – cash settled options |                      | (249 409)               |
| Number of options held at 30 June 2016                             |                      | 2 140 767               |

At 30 June 2016 the outstanding options were exercisable as follows:

| Earliest and latest exercise date   | Price per share in R | Total number of options | Options vested at 30 June 2016 | Options vested at 30 June 2016 at claw back offer price of R40.00 |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 November 2011 and 4 November 2016 | 36.95                | 275 390                 | 265 000                        | 10 390                                                            |
| 12 October 2012 and 11 October 2017 | 46.57                | 1 865 377               | 1 795 000                      | 70 377                                                            |
|                                     |                      | 2 140 767               | 2 060 000                      | 80 767                                                            |

Full details of the cash settled options exercised during the year are set out in the annual financial statements and are summarised as follows:

| Grant date                          | Number of options exercised including claw back shares | Exercise price R | Total gain paid to participants R000 |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 5 November 2011 and 4 November 2016 | 262 399                                                | 49.94            | 3 409                                |
| 12 October 2012 and 11 October 2017 | 1 654 933                                              | 53.59            | 11 624                               |
|                                     | 1 917 332                                              |                  | 15 033                               |

The cash settled options exercised during 30 June 2016 are set out in the annual financial statements and are summarised as follows:

| Grant date      | Number of options exercised including claw back shares | Exercise price R | Total gain paid to participants R000 |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 5 November 2009 | 119 508                                                | 58.52            | 1 380                                |
| 12 October 2010 | 129 901                                                | 48.50            | 393                                  |
|                 | 249 409                                                |                  | 1 773                                |

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Northam Share Incentive Plan (SIP)

The SIP was approved in 2011 when shareholders approved that the Northam Share Option Scheme be discontinued and replaced by the SIP, as the scheme no longer served the primary purpose of attracting and retaining employees.

The SIP is a full share-type plan which incorporates a combination of a conditional share plan (CSP) and a forfeitable share plan (FSP).

The key features that are common to both the CSP and the FSP are as follows:

- All senior officials and executives, including executive directors, in job grade D1 and above are eligible;
- Non-executive directors are not eligible to participate;
- Employees will not be required to pay for shares granted to them;
- In the event of a change of control of the company, all awards will vest;
- In the event of a variation in share capital such as a capitalisation issue, subdivision of shares, consolidation of shares, liquidation etc., employees will continue to participate in the SIP. The committee may make such adjustment to awards or take such other action to place employees in no worse a position than they were prior to the happening of the relevant event, and to ensure that the fair value of awards immediately after the event is materially the same as the fair value thereof immediately before the event;
- The issue of shares as consideration for an acquisition or a vendor consideration placing will not be regarded as a circumstance that requires any adjustment to awards;
- Any adjustments made will be reported in the company's annual financial statements in the year during which the adjustment is made.

In order to avoid any future dilution, all shares will either be cash settled or equity settled through purchases in the open market.

Key features of the CSP and FSP are as follows:

### CSP

- Shares will be awarded or granted to employees once a year;
- The number of conditional shares awarded, and the extent to which they will be subject to performance conditions, will primarily be based on the employee's annual salary, grade, performance, retention requirements and market benchmarks or some combination thereof;
- Both the retention shares and the performance shares will vest after three years; and
- Performance conditions will be set by the SE&HR committee before an award is made, and will be based on appropriate company performance measures at the time.

### FSP

- Shares, which have no performance conditions attached, can only be awarded or granted in exceptional circumstances, approved by the SE&HR committee, for purposes of attracting key new employees;
- The number of forfeitable shares to be made to an employee will primarily be based on the employee's annual salary, grade, performance and retention or attraction requirements;
- The forfeitable shares will be delivered to the employees, free of charge, subsequent to the award date, with them enjoying all shareholder rights from inception;
- Awards will, however, be subject to restrictions that will prevent the forfeitable shares from being disposed of, ceded, transferred or otherwise encumbered before vesting; and
- Vesting of the forfeitable shares will only be subject to the particular employee remaining in the employment of a group company for predetermined vesting period. No company performance conditions will apply.

In respect of awards of Conditional Shares made, prior to 2016, previously a participant was entitled to elect to receive the settlement amount in lieu of receiving the conditional shares. After 2016, the SE&HR committee shall be entitled to determine that a participant shall receive the settlement amount in lieu of receiving the conditional shares (including BEE Transaction Conditional Shares) on settlement.

The SE&HR committee, which is charged with overseeing the group's remuneration policy, reviews the performance criteria annually and revises them as economic and operational circumstances dictate.

## DIRECTORS REPORT continued

No shares were allocated under the FSP during the year under review, whilst the details of the shares allocated under the CSP are set out below.

| Grant date                 | Details             | Total number of shares | Retention shares | Performance shares |
|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| Balance at 1 July 2016     |                     | 6 489 400              | 1 412 000        | 5 077 400          |
| 8 November 2016            | Shares awarded      | 2 177 000              | 550 400          | 1 626 600          |
|                            | Shares forfeited    | (296 800)              | (75 100)         | (221 700)          |
|                            | Shares cash settled | (1 457 500)            | (141 600)        | (1 315 900)        |
| Balance as at 30 June 2017 |                     | 6 912 100              | 1 745 700        | 5 166 400          |

At 30 June 2017 the following awards were outstanding:

| Grant date                 | Details            | Total number of shares | Shares to be settled in F2018 | Shares to be settled thereafter |
|----------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 4 November 2014            | Retention shares   | 527 700                | 527 700                       | –                               |
| 4 November 2014            | Performance shares | 1 561 100              | 1 561 100                     | –                               |
| 11 November 2015           | Retention shares   | 709 100                | –                             | 709 100                         |
| 11 November 2015           | Performance shares | 2 100 700              | –                             | 2 100 700                       |
| 8 November 2016            | Retention shares   | 508 900                | –                             | 508 900                         |
| 8 November 2016            | Performance shares | 1 504 600              | –                             | 1 504 600                       |
| Balance as at 30 June 2017 |                    | 6 912 100              | 2 088 800                     | 4 823 300                       |

Below is the details of the shares allocated under the CSP for the 30 June 2016 financial year:

| Grant date                 | Details             | Total number of shares | Retention shares | Performance shares |
|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| Balance at 1 July 2015     |                     | 5 690 000              | 1 345 200        | 4 344 800          |
| 11 November 2015           | Shares awarded      | 3 527 900              | 890 300          | 2 637 600          |
|                            | Shares forfeited    | (587 200)              | (178 000)        | (409 200)          |
|                            | Shares cash settled | (2 141 300)            | (645 500)        | (1 495 800)        |
| Balance as at 30 June 2016 |                     | 6 489 400              | 1 412 000        | 5 077 400          |

At 30 June 2016 the following awards were outstanding:

| Grant date                 | Details            | Total number of shares | Shares to be settled in F2017 | Shares to be settled thereafter |
|----------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 15 November 2013           | Performance shares | 897 000                | 897 000                       | –                               |
| 4 November 2014            | Retention shares   | 600 200                | –                             | 600 200                         |
| 4 November 2014            | Performance shares | 1 775 100              | –                             | 1 775 100                       |
| 11 November 2015           | Retention shares   | 811 800                | –                             | 811 800                         |
| 11 November 2015           | Performance shares | 2 405 300              | –                             | 2 405 300                       |
| Balance as at 30 June 2016 |                    | 6 489 400              | 897 000                       | 5 592 400                       |

Full details of the shares granted during the year are set out in the annual financial statements.

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Lock-in and Incentive Mechanism (LIM)

At the AGM on 9 November 2016 shareholders approved amendments, including a modification to the rules of the Northam share incentive plan for the introduction of the new incentive mechanism, comprising the BEE incentive plan (BIP) and the cash incentive bonus (CIBB) in respect of the BEE transaction (collectively the LIM). In terms of the modification, any allocation or award under the new long term BEE transaction incentive plan will be subject to a maximum allocation of 5 000 000 shares, which number is included in the existing total SIP allocation limit of 19 879 000 shares and not in addition thereto. The LIM was designed to incentivise the performance of the company's key executives, so as to, *inter alia*, mitigate certain financial risks arising from the BEE transaction and retain the skills and expertise of the key management team.

Northam was requested by certain of its key institutional shareholders to consider the creation of a mechanism which would appropriately incentivise Northam's senior management to address the financial risks associated with the guarantee provided by Northam in favour of the Zambezi preference shareholders (guarantee). A lock-in and incentive mechanism (LIM) which is specifically structured to incentivise the mitigation of those risks introduced by and unique to the guarantee, as well as, retaining key members of Northam's senior management as employees until the redemption of the Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares (preference shares) in May 2025 was approved.

During the course of F2015 the company concluded a BEE transaction in terms of which Northam provided the guarantee to the holders of the preference shares issued by Zambezi for purposes of funding the BEE transaction.

The preference shares will, subject to early redemption in certain instances, be redeemed on 18 May 2025 and Zambezi will therefore be required to redeem the preference shares and settle any dividends accumulated in respect of the preference shares that remain unpaid after making adequate provision for or paying any taxes arising in relation to the redemption of the preference shares.

Subject to certain exceptions, Zambezi may settle the redemption amount by distributing, disposing of and/or raising external funding encumbering the Northam ordinary shares held by it. Zambezi's ability to settle the redemption amount is therefore highly dependent upon the share price on or about the preference share redemption date (redemption date) and, therefore, the share price growth over the period preceding the redemption date.

To the extent that the value of the shares held by Zambezi amounts to less than the preference share liability and Zambezi is unable to raise external funding to settle the redemption amount, Northam will be required to settle the balance of the redemption amount on behalf of Zambezi by either: (i) capitalising Zambezi by way of a subscription for shares in Zambezi; or (ii) making payment and/or issuing new shares to the preference shareholders (guarantee liability).

The guarantee liability may be settled in cash or, subject to certain exceptions, by the issue of new shares. Accordingly, if a guarantee liability arises, the value of shares may be diluted by a further issue of new shares or reduced by the related payment of cash to settle the guarantee liability.

The SIP incentivises Northam's management over the short to medium term (three years) and is primarily focused on motivating the achievement by management of various technical and financial targets. Although these measures are appropriate and essential to the viability of the group, the SIP does not allow for performance measures relating to the guarantee liability. This requires a long-term incentive mechanism premised on the exact variables which will determine the guarantee liability.

It is further recognised that Northam's market position relative to its peers has altered significantly with Northam having become a sizable and respected market participant. This success increases the risk of Northam losing members of its senior management, making it a strategic imperative for the company to retain management and prevent the loss of critical skills before the redemption date.

In the circumstances, Northam and the relevant committees of its board of directors have resolved to amend the rules to incorporate the LIM, with a view to appropriately incentivising the management team in order to prevent the guarantee liability from materialising and simultaneously lock-in their skill-set until the redemption date. This objective is consistent with the interests of Northam's shareholders.

The LIM comprises two separate mechanisms structured with specific reference to the terms of the BEE transaction and, more specifically, the potential guarantee liability:

## Long-term BEE transaction incentive plan (BIP)

The BIP addresses the long-term incentivisation and retention of its participants by aligning their interests with shareholders through equity participation. The BIP was implemented through the SIP, which has been amended to incorporate the specific elements of the BIP. The BIP was implemented in addition to the SIP and was not a replacement nor did it affect the SIP.

# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Short-term cash incentive bonus in respect of the BEE transaction (CIBB)

In light of the exceptionally long term of the BIP incentive (i.e. 10 years) and the benefit of compounded growth in the share price over this period, the CIBB considers the short-term incentivisation of management to continuously maintain the long-term objectives introduced by the BIP. Importantly, the CIBB also acts as a strong retention tool by financially penalising CIBB recipients that leave the employ of the group.

The combination of the BIP and CIBB provide the company with an effective mechanism for addressing the guarantee liability risk, motivating shareholder value creation over the long term and retaining essential skills in a competitive market.

The company will limit participants in the BIP to the key members of Northam's current and future key executive management team including, the chief executive officer (CEO), chief financial officer (CFO), chief commercial officer (CCO), chief geologist (CG), chief technical officer (CTO), executive officer HR (EHR) and the senior general managers of Booyendal and Zondereinde mines (GM) (participants). The positions of the CG and CTO have not been filled and remain subject to the employment of suitable candidates by the group and the BEE CPS allocated to these positions will not be issued in the event that they are not filled.

The CEO has been allocated 1 500 000 BEE CPS, the CFO has been allocated 700 000 BEE CPS, each of the CCO and the EHR have been allocated 500 000 BEE CPS and each GM has been allocated 200 000 BEE CPS. At 30 June 2017 a total of 3 600 000 BEE CPS were issued.

The aggregate number of BEE CPS issued represents less than 1% of Northam's current issued share capital and may be settled in cash or shares at the election of the independent committee of the board responsible for administering the SIP at that time.

Vesting will be subject to the satisfaction of the performance condition that Zambezi: fully settles the redemption amount; and fully settles or makes adequate provision for all its tax liabilities arising from settlement of the redemption amount, on the basis that no guarantee liability will arise and no member of the group will be required to give any direct or indirect financial assistance for the purposes of or in connection with the settlement of the redemption amount.

Vesting of BEE CPS will occur 30 business days after the date on which the BIP performance condition is fulfilled (which is expected to be 18 May 2025) or, in the event that vesting of the BEE CPS is accelerated in certain exceptional instances, as set out in the current rules in relation to conditional shares, including a change of control of Northam or an earlier date determined in accordance with the rules.

In the event that the BIP performance condition is not satisfied, the BEE CPS will, subject to certain exceptions, not vest. If BEE CPS do not vest, they will not be settled and no value will accrue to participants.

Upon vesting, BEE CPS may be settled either through the issue of no more than the 5 million shares or in cash at the election of the committee. If cash settlement is elected the settlement amount will be established using the 60 day volume weighted average price (VWAP) of a share calculated on the day preceding settlement.

In the event that the preference shares are redeemed before the expected redemption date (i.e. 18 May 2025) and if the BIP performance condition is satisfied at that time, the BEE CPS will vest pro rata to the number of years of the performance period that has been completed at that time. Those BEE CPS that do not vest in such circumstances will lapse.

In the event that Northam undergoes a change of control, all the BEE CPS that have not vested will be treated in the same manner as other conditional shares and vest in full at that time irrespective of whether the BIP performance condition has been met or not. This is consistent with the existing rules.

In order to retain key management, BEE CPS will lapse if a participant leaves the employ of the group before the vesting date unless their employment is terminated by reason of a no fault termination or early retirement.

No fault termination includes, *inter alia*, termination of employment by reason of a participant's death, retrenchment, retirement, ill health, injury, disability or any reason that is not a fault termination. A fault termination comprises termination of employment by reason of, *inter alia*, resignation or dismissal.

In the event that a participant leaves the employ of the group by reason of no fault termination or early retirement before the vesting date, and such date is: prior to 18 May 2020, then the BEE CPS which have not vested will lapse immediately; or after 18 May 2020, the participant will retain a proportionate amount of their BEE CPS which have not vested, calculated by reference to what proportion of the period from 18 May 2020 to 18 May 2025 has elapsed prior to the termination of employment.

## DIRECTORS REPORT continued

This provision is further illustrated in the table below:

| Termination of employment between years: | Percentage of BEE CPS retained |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 0 – 6                                    | 0                              |
| 6 – 7                                    | 20                             |
| 7 – 8                                    | 40                             |
| 8 – 9                                    | 60                             |
| 9 – 10                                   | 80                             |

BEE CPS retained in these instances will remain subject to the BIP performance condition and will only vest and be settled on the vesting date, together with BEE CPS held by other participants. In the event that a participant's employment is terminated as a result of death, injury or ill-health, and the committee is of the reasonable opinion that the BIP performance condition is likely to be fulfilled, it may, in exceptional circumstances, allow that participant's BEE CPS to vest and be settled immediately.

The rationale for retention by a participant of a portion of their BEE CPS after year 6 is that the key strategic decisions and actions affecting the value of a share over the BIP performance period are likely to be made during the first 5 years of this period. Thereafter, value delivery will depend upon, amongst other factors, the successful execution of such decisions as planned. Accordingly, it is deemed appropriate to allow for continued participation post year 5 notwithstanding termination of employment.

In the event that a participant leaves the employ of the group before the vesting date by reason of fault termination, that participant's BEE CPS that have not vested will lapse.

The CIBB is intended to comprise an incentive mechanism and a retention mechanism and further aligns management with the interests of Northam's shareholders.

Participants in the CIBB will include the participants noted previously and may include, from time to time, other employees of the group deemed to be critical to the group's operations and strategy. Participants in the CIBB, other than participants, will be required to be recommended for participation by management subject to approval by the committee.

Payments under the CIBB will be made annually, subject to the fulfilment of the CIBB performance conditions, as set out below, as at the 31<sup>st</sup> trading day following the publication of the company's financial results for each financial year.

Participants will receive, on an annual basis, 15% of their cost to company remuneration excluding performance bonuses, if the value of a share at the condition date (calculated as the 60 day VWAP of a share) is equal to or greater than the redemption amount per preference share.

Furthermore, participants will receive, on an annual basis, an additional 15% of their cost to company remuneration excluding performance bonuses, if the aggregate value of the shares held by Zambezi at the condition date (using the 60 day VWAP of a share) is sufficient to, in addition to fully settle the redemption amount, fully settle or make adequate provision for all of Zambezi's tax liabilities arising from settlement of the redemption amount, on the basis that no guarantee liability will arise and no member of the group will be required to give any direct or indirect financial assistance for the purposes of or in connection with the settlement of the redemption amount.

This will effectively incentivise achievement of the CIBB performance conditions on an annual basis.

For the avoidance of doubt, no CIBB payment will be made unless the CIBB performance conditions are achieved in that year.

The CIBB will also act as a robust employee retention mechanism. In the event that a CIBB recipient leaves the employ of the group within 12 months of receiving a CIBB (restraint period) for reason of a fault termination, that person will be required to repay to the company, before the deduction of PAYE, the pro rata amount of the CIBB received (calculated according to the number of months remaining in the restraint period). The CIBB refund penalty will dissuade CIBB participants from leaving the employ of the group by financially penalising them if they leave.

The CIBB will be terminated upon settlement or lapse of the BEE CPS.



# DIRECTORS REPORT continued

## Special resolutions

The following special resolutions were passed by the shareholders at the AGM in November 2016:

- Approval of amendments to the existing MOI: fractional entitlements;
- Approval of amendments to the existing MOI: distributions;
- Approval of non-executive directors' remuneration for the year ending 30 June 2017;
- Financial assistance; and
- General authority to repurchase issued shares.

## Going concern

The board believes that the company and group have adequate financial resources to continue operating for the foreseeable future and, accordingly, the financial statements have been prepared on a going concern basis.

The board is not aware of any material changes that may adversely impact the company and group or any material non-compliance with statutory or regulatory requirements.

## Events after the reporting date

Subsequent to year-end, an agreement was entered into to purchase a suite of PGM recycling equipment and the associated premises from A-1 Specialized Services Inc., a recycler of PGMs. The business is located in the state of Pennsylvania, United States of America. The total value of the transaction amounts to USD10.7 million in cash.

In addition to the above the section 102 Ministerial Consent relating to the approval for the purchase of the Tumela block mineral resources from Anglo American Platinum Limited for R1.0 billion was obtained.

Apart from these transactions, there have been no other events subsequent to the year-end, which require additional disclosure or adjustment to these financial results.

# AUDIT AND RISK COMMITTEE REPORT

*The independent audit and risk committee (the committee) is pleased to present its report for the financial year ended 30 June 2017.*

The committee is constituted in terms of the Companies Act. In terms of the company's listing on the JSE it is required from 1 October 2017 to adhere to the King Code on Corporate Governance of South Africa (King IV). The committee is constituted as a statutory committee of Northam Platinum Limited in respect of its statutory duties in terms of section 94(7) of the Companies Act and a subcommittee of the board in respect of all other duties assigned to it by the board.

The committee assist the board in carrying out its functions relating to the safeguarding of assets, the operation of adequate risk management, control processes, the preparation of financial statements in compliance with all applicable legislation and regulations, the oversight of the external and internal audit appointments and the combined assurance function.

The committee does not provide relief to board members for their joint and several responsibilities regarding their fiduciary duties and they must continue to exercise due care and judgement in accordance with their legal obligations.

The committee operates under documented terms of reference. The terms of reference of the Audit and Risk Committee are subject to the provisions of the Companies Act, MOI, and any other applicable law or regulatory provision. Where this terms of reference conflicts with any legislation and/or rules of the Companies Act, and/or the MOI, that legislation and/or regulation takes precedence over this terms of reference.

The committee has discharged all its responsibilities as contained in the charter. The committee reviews accounting policies and financial information issued to stakeholders and the chairman of the audit committee reports to the board on the committee's deliberations and decisions. The internal and external auditors have unrestricted access to the committee. Further, the committee regularly reviews its corporate governance practices in relation to the company's compliance with the requirements of the Companies Act and the JSE listing requirements.

## Composition

The committee must be comprised of at least three non-executive board members who must be elected by shareholders on the recommendation of the Nomination Committee. All members of the committee must be non-executive board members and meet all applicable independence requirements and be appropriately qualified.

The chairman of the board is not eligible to be chairman or a member of this subcommittee and the chairman of this sub-committee must be an independent, non-executive director.

Collectively, members of this committee must have the appropriate mix of qualifications and experience in order to fulfil their duties adequately. Such qualifications and skills will include expertise and/or experience in the following fields; financial, legal, risk management, sustainability issues and reporting, internal financial control, external and internal audit processes, information technology (IT) governance, corporate governance, ethics and integrated reporting. Members of the committee are required to ensure they are fully appraised of latest developments in the mining industry and in commerce generally.

Important attributes of the members are an independent and enquiring mind-set, a reasonable understanding of the complexities involved and an appreciation of the business and mining industry.

During the year the committee comprised three independent non-executive directors namely, Ms HH Hickey (chairman), Mr R Havenstein and Mrs TE Kgosi. Ms Hickey replaced Mr Martin as chairman of the committee on 9 November 2016, following Mr Martin's retirement from the board. The committee met on five occasions during the year and all members together with the company secretary were present at each of these scheduled meetings.

The chief executive officer, the chief financial officer, the group financial controller and the internal as well as external auditors attend by invitation to provide a coordinated approach to all assurance activities. The internal and external auditors have unrestricted access to the committee. Both internal and external auditors meet with the committee members without management present.

## The role of the committee

The role of this committee is an independent one with accountability to the board and to shareholders. It is also an overseer and makes recommendations to the board for final approval. The committee cannot assume the function of management which remains the responsibility of the executive directors and senior management.

Regarding risk, the committee ensure that the company has an effective risk policy and a plan for risk management in order to assist the company in achieving its strategic goals and that the disclosure of risk is complete, timely and relevant. The committee is an integral component of the risk management process and specifically the committee oversee: financial reporting risks, internal financial controls, fraud risks as it relates to financial reporting and IT risks as it relates to financial reporting.

# AUDIT AND RISK COMMITTEE REPORT continued

## Execution of functions and responsibilities during the year

### *Integrated reporting*

- Consider all factors and risks that would influence the accuracy of the integrated report. This includes factors that may predispose management to present misleading information, a poor significant judgment, reporting and decisions, failure at enforcement, monitoring by regulatory bodies, forecast of financial information and question information that brings into doubt previously published information.
- Review and comment on the annual financial statements, interim reports, dividends and other price sensitive information, such as trading statements. Ensure that financial statements are prepared in terms of International Financial Reporting Standards and other appropriate standards.
- Review and comment on the integrated report.
- Recommend to the board the engagement of external auditors or internal auditors, where applicable.
- Consider whether external auditors should perform assurance procedures or other non-audit services.
- Review significant findings and other matters arising through to completion of the annual financial statements.
- Recommend the annual financial statements and integrated report for approval by the board.

The committee reviewed the annual financial statements and has recommend the approval thereof to the board. The board has subsequently approved the financial statements, which will be open for discussion at the forthcoming AGM.

### *Combined assurance*

- Ensure that the combined assurance received is appropriate to address all the significant risks facing the company.
- Monitor the relationship between the external assurance providers of the company.

Based on the results of the review of the company's system of internal financial controls, which was performed by the internal audit function and external auditors, nothing has come to the attention of the committee to indicate that the internal financial controls were not operating effectively.

### *Chief financial officer (CFO) and the finance function*

- Confirm that the CFO is suitably qualified and experienced, and confirm that the committee has executed this responsibility.
- That the finance department of the company has adequate resources and experience to manage the company's financial function.

In terms of the JSE listing requirements, the committee has satisfied itself as to the appropriateness of the expertise and experience of the CFO and the finance function as a whole.

# AUDIT AND RISK COMMITTEE REPORT continued

## *Internal audit*

- Appoint or dismiss the head of internal audit and assess the performance of the head of internal audit.
- Approve the internal audit plan, mandate and budget with particular emphasis on risk areas.
- Ensure that the internal audit function is independent and adequately qualified and resourced on a continuous basis and assess its performance.
- Approve deviations from the approved internal audit plan or any changes in the audit scope or approach.
- Review of the extent to which the internal audit function has co-ordinated with other internal and external assurance providers in providing proper coverage.
- Review the internal audit results and significant audit findings together with the relative management comments and action plans.
- Consider and review any difficulties encountered in the course of the audits, including any restrictions on the scope of internal audit's work or access to required information.

The committee confirms the effectiveness and independence of the internal audit function.

The committee has ensured coverage of the audit universe by approving the audit plans and budgets for internal audit and has confirmed the competence of the internal audit function as a whole. Audit reports are circulated to the members of the committee and are reviewed. Significant findings have been discussed and considered, taking into account action plans to resolve these matters going forward.

## *Risk management*

- Promote and enforce the highest degree of ethical standards in business practices within the organisation and in external relationships.
- Ensure that effective systems of internal control are developed, implemented, monitored and maintained by management.
- Oversee the development and annual review of the company's risk policy and plan for risk management and recommend for approval of this by the board.
- Monitor implementation of the risk policy and plan.
- Make recommendations to the board concerning the levels of risk tolerance and appetite and monitoring that risks are managed within the levels of tolerance and appetite as approved by the board.
- Ensure that risk management assessments are performed by management on a continuous basis.
- Ensure that the risk management plan is widely disseminated throughout the company and integrated in the day to day activities of the company.
- Oversee internal financial control, IT risk, fraud risk and all risks associated with financial reporting.
- Ensure that management continuously monitors risk and its mitigation.
- Ensure that adequate insurance cover remains in place.
- Ensure that there is an adequate framework and methodologies for both implementation of recommended changes and anticipation of "black swan" (extraordinary/unexpected) events.
- Ensure that management considers and implements appropriate risk responses.
- Review the risk register and ensure that it is adequately updated and is complete, timely and relevant.
- Express the committee's formal opinion to the board regarding the effectiveness of the system and process of risk management in the company.
- Review reporting concerning risk management that is to be included in the integrated report for it being timely, comprehensive and relevant.
- Oversee and monitor the adequacy of internal controls within the company specifically related to financial reporting risks and fraud risks (and any incidents of fraud).

The committee confirms that they have complied with the requirements relating to risk management as noted in detail above.

# AUDIT AND RISK COMMITTEE REPORT continued

## *External audit*

- Nominate an independent external auditor for appointment and approval by shareholders.
- Approve the engagement terms and remuneration of external auditors.
- Report and monitor the independence of the external auditor in the financial statements.
- Pre-approve non-audit services to be rendered to the group.
- Define a policy for non-audit services to be provided by external auditors.
- Ensure that there is a process, in terms of which the committee is informed of any “Reportable Irregularities” (as identified in the Audit Profession Act 2005) identified and reported by the external auditor.
- Ascertain the effectiveness of the external audit process.
- Ensure that the audit firm and where appropriate, the individual auditor responsible for the audit function is accredited as such on the JSE List of Auditors and their advisors as required by the Listing Requirements of the JSE.

The independence of the external auditor is regularly reviewed. Further, the approval of all non-audit-related services are governed by an appropriate approval framework. Meetings were held with the external auditor where management was not present and, where concerns were raised, these concerns were adequately dealt with by the audit committee.

After taking these factors into account, the committee is satisfied that Ernst & Young Incorporated is independent of the company and group. Mr Mike Herbst will retire as the designated external audit partner in terms of section 92(1) of the Companies Act and be replaced by Mr Ebrahim Dhorat for the 30 June 2018 financial year. The committee recommends the re-appointment of Ernst & Young Incorporated for the financial year ending 30 June 2018.

## **Key audit matters**

The committee noted the key audit matters set out in the report of the independent auditors namely:

- **Impairment of non-financial assets:** The group assesses, at each reporting date, whether there is an indication that assets may be impaired. If any indication exists, the recoverable value of assets are determined based on discounted cash flow models. These models include the latest approved budgeted forecasts, which are considered to be reasonably stated. Based on the assessment performed it was determined that the recoverable value of non-financial assets included on the statement of financial position is higher than the carrying value and therefore no need for any impairment.
- **Physical quantities of inventory:** The physical quantities of inventories are calculated based on theoretical calculation. The estimates are subsequently trued up to the final metal accounting quantities when available. Recoveries are based on actual results and are in line with industry standards. The nature of the production process inherently limits the ability to precisely measure recoverability levels. As a result, the metallurgical balancing process is constantly monitored and the variables used in the process are refined based on actual results over time. Stockpile tonnages are verified by periodic surveys as well as by estimating the number of tonnes added and removed from the stockpile as well as by estimating the number of contained PGM ounces based on assay data and expected recoveries.

The committee has deliberated on these and is comfortable that they are fairly represented.

The committee is satisfied that it has considered and discharged its responsibilities in line with its terms of reference during the year under review.

On behalf of the committee

Hester Hickey  
Chairman

Johannesburg  
22 August 2017

# APPROVAL OF ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

In approving the annual financial statements, the directors hereby confirm:

- That they are responsible for the preparation, integrity and fair presentation of the annual financial statements of Northam and its subsidiaries. The auditors are responsible for auditing and reporting on whether the financial statements are fairly presented.
- The directors are of the opinion, based on the information and explanations given by management that the system of internal control provides reasonable assurance that the financial records may be relied on for the preparation of the annual financial statements. However, any system of internal financial control can only provide reasonable and not absolute, assurance against material misstatement or loss.
- The annual financial statements have been prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards. They conform and adhere to applicable accounting standards and are presented after applying accounting policies supported by reasonable and prudent judgements and estimates made by management, which have been consistently applied.
- Adequate accounting records and an effective system of internal controls and risk management have been maintained during the entire financial year.
- They have reviewed the additional information included in the annual report and are responsible for both the accuracy and consistency with the annual financial statements.
- The going concern basis has been adopted in preparing the annual financial statements. The directors have no reason to believe that the group will not be a going concern in the foreseeable future based on forecasts and available cash resources. These financial statements support the viability of the company and the group.
- The annual financial statements have been audited by the independent auditors, Ernst & Young Inc. who were given unrestricted access to all financial records and related data including minutes of all meetings of shareholders, the board of directors and committees of the board. The directors believe that all representations made to the independent auditors during their audit are valid and appropriate. The unmodified audit report of Ernst & Young Inc. is included in these annual financial statement.

The annual financial statements were approved by the board of directors on 22 August 2017 and are signed on its behalf by:

**P L Zim**  
Chairman

**P A Dunne**  
Chief executive

**H H Hickey**  
Chairman – audit and risk  
committee

Johannesburg  
22 August 2017

## COMPANY SECRETARY'S CONFIRMATION

I, PB Beale, in my capacity as company secretary of Northam, hereby certify in terms of section 88(2) of the Companies Act that all returns and notices required of a public company in terms of the Companies Act have, in respect of the year under review, been lodged with the Companies and Intellectual Property Commission and that all such returns are true, correct and up to date.

**PB Beale**  
Company secretary

Johannesburg  
22 August 2017

# STATEMENT OF PROFIT OR LOSS AND OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME

For the year ended 30 June 2017

|                                                                                                                                                 |      | Group            |                  | Company        |                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
|                                                                                                                                                 |      | 2017             | 2016             | 2017           | 2016           |
|                                                                                                                                                 | Note | R000             | R000             | R000           | R000           |
| Revenue                                                                                                                                         | 34   | 7 051 337        | 6 404 641        | 6 539 925      | 6 019 284      |
| Sales revenue                                                                                                                                   | 35   | 6 865 185        | 6 097 070        | 6 395 036      | 5 740 467      |
| Cost of sales                                                                                                                                   |      | (6 251 200)      | (5 713 722)      | (6 162 574)    | (5 680 282)    |
| Operating costs                                                                                                                                 | 36   | (5 676 017)      | (5 007 233)      | (3 717 601)    | (3 430 234)    |
| Concentrates purchased                                                                                                                          |      | (404 093)        | (350 514)        | (2 508 386)    | (2 194 494)    |
| Refining and other costs                                                                                                                        |      | (120 633)        | (133 186)        | (120 633)      | (133 186)      |
| Depreciation and write-offs                                                                                                                     |      | (452 584)        | (403 545)        | (182 650)      | (187 966)      |
| Change in metal inventories                                                                                                                     |      | 402 127          | 180 756          | 366 696        | 265 598        |
| Operating profit                                                                                                                                |      | 613 985          | 383 348          | 232 462        | 60 185         |
| Share of earnings/(loss) from associate and joint venture                                                                                       | 6    | 4 870            | (32 253)         | –              | –              |
| Investment revenue                                                                                                                              | 37   | 167 306          | 265 258          | 126 043        | 109 480        |
| Finance costs excluding preference share dividends                                                                                              | 38   | (71 185)         | (39 634)         | (72 512)       | (33 515)       |
| Net foreign exchange (losses)/gains                                                                                                             |      | (46 729)         | 26 163           | (32 564)       | 26 163         |
| Sundry income                                                                                                                                   | 39   | 73 361           | 154 765          | 64 233         | 256 382        |
| Sundry expenditure                                                                                                                              | 40   | (130 843)        | (92 122)         | (60 587)       | (37 089)       |
| Profit before preference share dividends                                                                                                        |      | 610 765          | 665 525          | 257 075        | 381 606        |
| Amortisation of liquidity fees paid on preference shares                                                                                        |      | (16 390)         | (18 088)         | –              | –              |
| Preference share dividends net of amounts capitalised                                                                                           |      | (1 017 396)      | (918 806)        | –              | –              |
| Loss on derecognition of preference share liability                                                                                             |      | (901)            | –                | –              | –              |
| (Loss)/profit before tax                                                                                                                        |      | (423 922)        | (271 369)        | 257 075        | 381 606        |
| Taxation                                                                                                                                        | 41   | (212 021)        | (236 894)        | (73 065)       | (108 988)      |
| <b>(Loss)/profit for the year</b>                                                                                                               |      | <b>(635 943)</b> | <b>(508 263)</b> | <b>184 010</b> | <b>272 618</b> |
| Other comprehensive income                                                                                                                      |      |                  |                  |                |                |
| Items that will be subsequently reclassified to profit or loss                                                                                  |      | –                | 19 822           | 2 039          | –              |
| Fair value adjustment on the investment in Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares classified as available for sale net of deferred tax |      | –                | –                | 2 039          | –              |
| Share of associate's exchange differences on translating foreign operations and foreign currency translation                                    |      | –                | (3 947)          | –              | –              |
| Reclassification of other comprehensive income from associate to profit or loss                                                                 |      | –                | 23 769           | –              | –              |
| <b>Total comprehensive income for the year</b>                                                                                                  |      | <b>(635 943)</b> | <b>(488 441)</b> | <b>186 049</b> | <b>272 618</b> |

  

|                                       | Cents   | Cents   |
|---------------------------------------|---------|---------|
| Loss per share                        | (181.8) | (145.3) |
| Fully diluted loss per share          | (181.8) | (145.3) |
| Headline loss per share               | (181.9) | (140.9) |
| Fully diluted headline loss per share | (181.9) | (140.9) |

# STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION

For the year ended 30 June 2017

|                                                             |      | Group       |             | Company     |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
|                                                             |      | 2017        | 2016        | 2017        | 2016        |
|                                                             | Note | R000        | R000        | R000        | R000        |
| <b>Assets</b>                                               |      |             |             |             |             |
| <b>Non-current assets</b>                                   |      | 15 483 553  | 14 110 084  | 14 019 436  | 13 299 712  |
| Property, plant and equipment                               | 4    | 9 022 260   | 7 853 993   | 3 323 252   | 2 790 278   |
| Mining properties and mineral resources                     | 5    | 5 636 342   | 5 614 094   | 116 558     | 101 518     |
| Interest in associates and joint ventures                   | 6    | 167 214     | 192 164     | –           | 36 845      |
| Investment in subsidiaries                                  | 7    | –           | –           | 10 216 000  | 10 236 000  |
| Unlisted investment                                         | 8    | –           | 6           | –           | 6           |
| Other investments                                           | 9    | –           | –           | 230 505     | –           |
| Land and township development                               | 10   | 48 529      | 51 341      | 22 749      | 18 218      |
| Long term receivables                                       | 11   | 83 745      | 89 717      | –           | –           |
| Investments held by Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund | 12   | 102 233     | 93 647      | 48 274      | 43 204      |
| Environmental Guarantee Investment                          | 13   | 68 104      | 60 345      | 54 507      | 49 187      |
| Buttonshepe Conservancy Trust                               | 14   | 11 126      | 10 445      | –           | –           |
| Long term prepayments                                       | 15   | 336 409     | –           | –           | –           |
| Other assets                                                | 16   | 7 591       | –           | 7 591       | –           |
| Deferred tax asset                                          | 23   | –           | 144 332     | –           | –           |
| Long term subsidiary loan                                   | 17   | –           | –           | –           | 24 456      |
| <b>Current assets</b>                                       |      | 4 103 337   | 4 867 779   | 5 433 769   | 5 613 269   |
| Short term subsidiary loan                                  | 17   | –           | –           | 1 838 213   | 2 330 527   |
| Inventories                                                 | 18   | 1 729 102   | 1 330 270   | 1 673 000   | 1 308 256   |
| Trade and other receivables                                 | 19   | 548 997     | 375 204     | 487 956     | 274 353     |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                   | 20   | 1 786 865   | 3 105 080   | 1 396 677   | 1 654 417   |
| Tax receivable                                              |      | 38 373      | 57 225      | 37 923      | 45 716      |
| <b>Non-current assets held for sale</b>                     | 6    | 49 222      | –           | 49 222      | –           |
| <b>Total assets</b>                                         |      | 19 636 112  | 18 977 863  | 19 502 427  | 18 912 981  |
| <b>Equities and liabilities</b>                             |      |             |             |             |             |
| Stated capital                                              | 21   | 13 778 114  | 13 778 114  | 13 778 114  | 13 778 114  |
| Treasury shares                                             | 21   | (6 556 123) | (6 556 123) | –           | –           |
| (Accumulated loss)/retained earnings                        |      | (4 398)     | 631 545     | (5 916 974) | (6 077 117) |
| Equity settled share based payment reserve                  | 22   | 874 448     | 874 448     | 1 173 756   | 1 173 756   |
| Other comprehensive income                                  |      | –           | –           | 2 039       | –           |
| <b>Total equity</b>                                         |      | 8 092 041   | 8 727 984   | 9 036 935   | 8 874 753   |
| <b>Non-current liabilities</b>                              |      | 9 929 685   | 9 072 179   | 9 005 235   | 8 981 473   |
| Deferred tax liability                                      | 23   | 585 883     | 590 637     | 605 265     | 594 935     |
| Long term provisions                                        | 24   | 304 829     | 272 820     | 141 284     | 139 316     |
| Long term loans                                             | 25   | 249 428     | 275 513     | 249 428     | 239 350     |
| Long term share based payment liability                     | 29   | 88 639      | 84 373      | 52 233      | 52 641      |
| Financial guarantee liability                               | 26   | –           | –           | 7 535 944   | 7 535 944   |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                             | 27   | 421 081     | 419 287     | 421 081     | 419 287     |
| Preference share liability                                  | 28   | 8 279 825   | 7 429 549   | –           | –           |
| <b>Current liabilities</b>                                  |      | 1 614 386   | 1 177 700   | 1 460 257   | 1 056 755   |
| Current portion of long term loans                          | 25   | 13 434      | 13 201      | 13 434      | 9 400       |
| Short term share based payment liability                    | 29   | 75 026      | 56 704      | 45 988      | 44 197      |
| Tax payable                                                 |      | 102 550     | 104 072     | –           | –           |
| Trade and other payables                                    | 31   | 1 268 172   | 877 935     | 1 254 863   | 885 358     |
| Short term provisions                                       | 32   | 155 204     | 125 788     | 145 972     | 117 800     |
| <b>Total equity and liabilities</b>                         |      | 19 636 112  | 18 977 863  | 19 502 427  | 18 912 981  |



# STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN EQUITY

For the year ended 30 June 2017

| Group                                            | Stated capital   | Equity settled<br>share-base<br>payment<br>reserve | (Accumulated<br>loss)/retained<br>earnings | Other<br>comprehensive<br>income from<br>associate | Total equity     |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|------------------|
|                                                  | R000             | R000                                               | R000                                       | R000                                               | R000             |
| Balance as at 1 July 2015                        | 7 221 991        | 874 448                                            | 1 139 808                                  | (19 822)                                           | 9 216 425        |
| Total comprehensive income for the year          | –                | –                                                  | (508 263)                                  | 19 822                                             | (488 441)        |
| Loss for the year                                | –                | –                                                  | (508 263)                                  | –                                                  | (508 263)        |
| Other compressive income for the year            | –                | –                                                  | –                                          | 19 822                                             | 19 822           |
| Balance as at 1 July 2016                        | 7 221 991        | 874 448                                            | 631 545                                    | –                                                  | 8 727 984        |
| Loss and total comprehensive income for the year | –                | –                                                  | (635 943)                                  | –                                                  | (635 943)        |
| <b>Balance as at 30 June 2017</b>                | <b>7 221 991</b> | <b>874 448</b>                                     | <b>(4 398)</b>                             | <b>–</b>                                           | <b>8 092 041</b> |
| Note                                             | 21               | 22                                                 |                                            |                                                    |                  |

| Company                                            | Stated capital    | Equity settled<br>share-base<br>payment<br>reserve | Accumulated<br>loss | Available for<br>sale reserve | Total equity     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|------------------|
|                                                    | R000              | R000                                               | R000                | R000                          | R000             |
| Balance as at 1 July 2015                          | 13 778 114        | 1 173 756                                          | (6 349 735)         | –                             | 8 602 135        |
| Profit and total comprehensive income for the year | –                 | –                                                  | 272 618             | –                             | 272 618          |
| Balance as at 1 July 2016                          | 13 778 114        | 1 173 756                                          | (6 077 117)         | –                             | 8 874 753        |
| Pooling of interest reserve (note 7)               | –                 | –                                                  | (23 867)            | –                             | (23 867)         |
| Total comprehensive income for the year            | –                 | –                                                  | 184 010             | 2 039                         | 186 049          |
| Profit for the year                                | –                 | –                                                  | 184 010             | –                             | 184 010          |
| Other compressive income for the year              | –                 | –                                                  | –                   | 2 039                         | 2 039            |
| <b>Balance as at 30 June 2017</b>                  | <b>13 778 114</b> | <b>1 173 756</b>                                   | <b>(5 916 974)</b>  | <b>2 039</b>                  | <b>9 036 935</b> |
| Note                                               | 21                | 22                                                 |                     |                               |                  |

# STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

|                                                                          | Note | Group            |                  | Company          |                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
|                                                                          |      | 2017             | 2016             | 2017             | 2016             |
|                                                                          |      | R000             | R000             | R000             | R000             |
| Cash flows from operating activities                                     |      | 981 497          | 839 081          | 262 584          | 346 378          |
| Cash generated from operations                                           | 43   | 1 055 139        | 952 650          | 433 124          | 386 199          |
| Investment revenue                                                       |      | 167 306          | 265 258          | 106 838          | 109 480          |
| Transaction fees paid                                                    |      | (8 594)          | –                | (8 594)          | –                |
| Movement relating to land and township development                       |      | 2 812            | (41 341)         | (4 531)          | (18 218)         |
| Change in working capital                                                | 44   | (182 388)        | (162 131)        | (208 842)        | (55 704)         |
| Taxation paid                                                            | 45   | (52 778)         | (175 355)        | (55 411)         | (75 379)         |
| Cash flows utilised in investing activities                              |      | (1 990 754)      | (1 126 793)      | (229 516)        | 1 508 558        |
| Property, plant and equipment and mining properties and mineral reserves |      |                  |                  |                  |                  |
| Additions to maintain operations                                         |      | (299 051)        | (369 636)        | (187 190)        | (259 818)        |
| Additions to expand operations                                           |      | (1 321 757)      | (804 344)        | (595 565)        | (294 297)        |
| Disposal proceeds                                                        |      | 3 732            | 4 235            | 3 732            | 2 785            |
| Increase in long term prepayments                                        |      | (336 409)        | –                | –                | –                |
| Investment in associates- cash distributed                               |      | –                | 24               | –                | –                |
| Additional investment made in associate                                  |      | (20 243)         | (20 601)         | (4 498)          | (10 601)         |
| Proceeds on sale of investment in Trans Hex Group Limited                |      | –                | 81 815           | –                | 81 815           |
| Movement in subsidiary loans                                             |      | –                | –                | –                | 1 871 036        |
| Repayment of the Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited loan           |      | –                | –                | 639 700          | –                |
| Increase in the Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited loan             |      | –                | –                | (19 713)         | –                |
| Increase in Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited                |      | –                | –                | (11 541)         | –                |
| Various smaller subsidiary loan repayments                               |      | –                | –                | 5 949            | –                |
| Increase in investments held by Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund  |      | (8 586)          | (10 655)         | (5 070)          | (4 336)          |
| Increase in investments held by Environmental Guarantee Investments      |      | (7 759)          | (8 223)          | (5 320)          | (5 050)          |
| Increase in investment held in Buttonshope Conservancy Trust             |      | (681)            | 592              | –                | –                |
| Investment made in Eland Platinum Proprietary Limited                    |      | –                | –                | (50 000)         | –                |
| Dividends received                                                       |      | –                | –                | –                | 127 024          |
| Cash flows utilised from financing activities                            |      | (250 130)        | (745 397)        | (231 980)        | (735 478)        |
| Interest paid                                                            |      | (29 694)         | (39 634)         | (51 508)         | (33 515)         |
| Repayment of long-term loan                                              |      | (50 756)         | –                | (10 792)         | –                |
| Issue of long-term loans                                                 |      | 38 992           | 244 950          | 38 992           | 248 750          |
| Acquisition of Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares           |      | (208 672)        | –                | (208 672)        | –                |
| Domestic medium term debt notes issued                                   |      | –                | 419 287          | –                | 419 287          |
| Domestic medium term debt notes repaid                                   |      | –                | (1 370 000)      | –                | (1 370 000)      |
| (Decrease)/increase in cash and cash equivalents                         |      | (1 259 387)      | (1 033 109)      | (198 912)        | 1 119 458        |
| Net foreign exchange difference on cash and cash equivalents             |      | (58 828)         | –                | (58 828)         | –                |
| Cash and cash equivalents at the beginning of the year                   |      | 3 105 080        | 4 138 189        | 1 654 417        | 534 959          |
| <b>Cash and cash equivalent at the end of the year</b>                   | 20   | <b>1 786 865</b> | <b>3 105 080</b> | <b>1 396 677</b> | <b>1 654 417</b> |

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 1. BASIS OF PREPARATION

The consolidated financial statements have been prepared on the historical cost basis, except for financial instruments to the extent required or permitted under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) and as set out in the relevant accounting policies.

The separate and consolidated financial statements incorporate the following accounting policies which have been applied on a basis consistent with the previous year, with the exception of the policies adopted during the year as more fully set out below.

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with IFRS requires that management and the board exercises their judgement in the process of applying the company's group accounting policies. It also requires the use of certain critical economic and other estimates. The areas requiring a high degree of judgement or complexity, or areas where assumptions or estimates are significant to the financial statements are disclosed in notes to the financial statements.

### 1.1 New accounting policies adopted

The following amendments, standards or interpretations impacting the group which became effective for the year beginning 1 July 2016 were adopted in the group's year-end results

- IFRS 10, IFRS 12 and IAS 28 Investment Entities: Applying the Consolidation Exception – Amendments to IFRS 10, IFRS 12 and IAS 28
- IFRS 11 Accounting for Acquisitions of Interest in Joint Operations – Amendments to IFRS 11
- IFRS 14 Regulatory Deferral Accounts
- IAS 1 Disclosure Initiative – Amendments to IAS 1
- IAS 16 and IAS 38 – Clarification of Acceptable Methods of Depreciation and Amortisation – Amendments to IAS 16 and IAS 38
- IAS 16 and IAS 41 Agriculture - Bearer Plants – Amendments to IAS 16 and IAS 41
- IAS 27 - Equity Method in Separate Financial Statements – Amendments to IAS 27
- AIP IFRS 5 Non-current Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operations – Changes in methods of disposal
- AIP IFRS 7 Financial instruments: Disclosures – Servicing contracts
- AIP IFRS 7 Financial instruments: Disclosures – Applicability of the offsetting disclosures to condensed interim financial statements
- AIP IAS 19 Employee Benefits – Discount rate: regional market issue
- AIP IAS 34 Interim Financial Reporting – Disclosure of information "elsewhere in the interim financial report"

The adoption of these amendments resulted in changes only in the way in which the financial statements are presented, as well as additional disclosures in the financial statements. They did not impact any amounts recognised in the statement of comprehensive income or statement of financial position.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 1.2 STANDARDS, INTERPRETATIONS AND AMENDMENTS ISSUED, BUT NOT YET EFFECTIVE

At the date of authorisation of these financial statements, the following standards, amendments and interpretations were in issue but not yet effective. The effective date refers to periods beginning on or after, unless otherwise indicated.

| Standard or Interpretation                                                                              | Impact                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Effective date |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <i>IFRS 2 Classification and Measurement of Share based Payment Transactions – Amendments to IFRS 2</i> | <p>The amendments are intended to eliminate diversity in practice, but are narrow in scope and address specific areas of classification and measurement. The amendments address three main areas:</p> <p><i>The effects of vesting conditions on the measurement of a cash-settled share-based payment transaction.</i></p> <p>The amendments clarify that the approach used to account for vesting conditions when measuring equity-settled share based payments also applies to cash-settled share-based payments.</p> <p><i>The classification of a share-based payment transaction with net settlement features for withholding tax obligations.</i></p> <p>This amendment adds an exception to address the narrow situation where the net settlement arrangement is designed to meet an entity's obligation under tax laws or regulations to withhold a certain amount in order to meet the employee's tax obligation associated with the share-based payment.</p> <p>This amount is then transferred, normally in cash, to the tax authorities on the employee's behalf. To fulfil this obligation, the terms of the share-based payment arrangement may permit or require the entity to withhold the number of equity instruments that are equal to the monetary value of the employee's tax obligation from the total number of equity instruments that otherwise would have been issued to the employee upon exercise (or vesting) of the share-based payment (net share settlement feature).</p> <p>Where transactions meet the criteria, they are not divided into two components but are classified in their entirety as equity-settled share-based payment transactions, if they would have been so classified in the absence of the net share settlement feature.</p> <p><i>The accounting where a modification to the terms and conditions of a share-based payment transaction changes its classification from cash-settled to equity-settled.</i></p> <p>The amendment clarifies that, if the terms and conditions of a cash-settled share-based payment transaction are modified, with the result that it becomes an equity-settled share-based payment transaction, the transaction is accounted for as an equity-settled transaction from the date of the modification.</p> <p>Any difference (whether a debit or a credit) between the carrying amount of the liability derecognised and the amount recognised in equity on the modification date is recognised immediately in profit or loss.</p> <p>Management does not expect this amendment to have any impact on the group as all share based payments are cash settled and do not have any modifications to vesting conditions.</p> | 1 January 2018 |

| Standard or Interpretation                           | Impact                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Effective date |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| IFRS 9 <i>Financial Instruments</i>                  | <p>The application of IFRS 9 may change the measurement and presentation of many financial instruments, depending on their contractual cash flows and the business model under which they are held.</p> <p>The impairment requirements will generally result in earlier recognition of credit losses. It will be important for entities to monitor the discussions of the IFRS Transition Resource Group for Impairment of Financial Instruments (ITG).</p> <p>The group has not assessed the impact of this standard, it is estimated that the full impact analysis will be completed by December 2017.</p> <p>The group anticipates adopting IFRS 9 for the financial period ending June 2019.</p> <p>Further details on this will be included in the next reporting period.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 1 January 2018 |
| IFRS 15 <i>Revenue from Contracts with Customers</i> | <p>IFRS 15 is more prescriptive than the current IFRS requirements for revenue recognition and provides more application guidance. The disclosure requirements are also more extensive.</p> <p>The standard will affect entities across all industries. Adoption will be a significant undertaking for most entities with potential changes to their current accounting, systems and processes. Therefore, a successful implementation will require an assessment of and a plan for managing the change.</p> <p>The group has not assessed the impact of this standard, it is estimated that the full impact analysis will be completed by December 2017.</p> <p>The group anticipates adopting IFRS 15 for the financial period ending June 2019.</p> <p>Further details on this will be included in the next reporting period.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 1 January 2018 |
| IFRS 16 <i>Leases</i>                                | <p>IFRS 16 requires lessees to account for all leases under a single on-balance sheet model in a similar way to finance leases under IAS 17. The standard includes two recognition exemptions for lessees – leases of 'low-value' assets (e.g., personal computers) and short-term leases (i.e., leases with a lease term of 12 months or less). At the commencement date of a lease, a lessee will recognise a liability to make lease payments (i.e., the lease liability) and an asset representing the right to use the underlying asset during the lease term (i.e., the right-of-use asset).</p> <p>Lessees will be required to separately recognise the interest expense on the lease liability and the depreciation expense on the right-of-use asset. Lessees will be required to remeasure the lease liability upon the occurrence of certain events (for example, a change in the lease term, a change in future lease payments resulting from a change in an index or rate used to determine those payments).</p> <p>The lessee will generally recognise the amount of the remeasurement of the lease liability as an adjustment to the right-of-use asset. Lessor accounting is substantially unchanged from today's accounting under IAS 17. Lessors will continue to classify all leases using the same classification principle as in IAS 17 and distinguish between two types of leases: operating and finance leases.</p> <p>The group has not assessed the impact of this standard, it is estimated that the full impact analysis will be completed by December 2017.</p> <p>The group anticipates adopting IFRS 16 for the financial period ending June 2020.</p> <p>Further details on this will be included in the next reporting period.</p> | 1 January 2019 |

| Standard or Interpretation                                                             | Impact                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Effective date |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| IAS 7 Disclosure Initiative – Amendments to IAS 7                                      | <p>The amendment requires the entity to provide disclosures that enable users of financial statements to evaluate changes in liabilities arising from financing activities, including both changes arising from cash flows and non-cash changes.</p> <p>The group is assessing the impact of this amendment.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 1 January 2017 |
| IAS 12 Recognition of Deferred Tax Assets for Unrealised Losses – Amendments to IAS 12 | <p>The amendments clarify that an entity needs to consider whether tax law restricts the sources of taxable profits against which it may make deductions on the reversal of that deductible temporary differences.</p> <p>The amendments also provide guidance on how an entity should determine future taxable profits and explain the circumstances in which taxable profit may include the recovery of some assets for more than their carrying amounts.</p> <p>Management is currently assessing the impact of the amendment with regards to the guidance on how an entity should determine future taxable profits and the circumstances in which taxable profits may include the recovery of some assets for more than their carrying amount.</p>                                             | 1 January 2017 |
| IFRIC Interpretation 22 Foreign Currency Transactions and Advance Consideration        | <p>The amendments are intended to eliminate diversity in practice, when recognising the related asset, expense or income (or part of it) on the derecognition of a non-monetary asset or non-monetary liability relating to advance consideration received or paid in a foreign currency.</p> <p>Management will assess the impact and adopt this for the first time in the 2019 reporting period as this will only be applicable then.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 1 January 2018 |
| IFRIC Interpretation 23 Uncertainty over Income Tax Treatments                         | <p>The interpretation addresses the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whether than entity considers uncertain tax treatments separately</li> <li>• The assumptions an entity makes about the examination of tax treatments by taxation authorities</li> <li>• How the entity determines taxable profit (tax loss), tax bases, unused tax credits and tax rates</li> <li>• How an entity considers changes in facts and circumstances</li> </ul> <p>Entities need to evaluate whether they have established appropriate processes and procedures to obtain information on a timely basis that is necessary to apply the requirements of the interpretation and make the required disclosures.</p> <p>Management is currently assessing the impact of this interpretation.</p> | 1 January 2019 |

Northam notes the new standards, interpretations and amendments which have been issued but not yet effective and does not plan to early adopt any of the amendments, standards and interpretations.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 1.2 Consolidation

The consolidated financial statements include the results, financial position and cash flows of Northam, its subsidiaries, joint ventures and associates. A subsidiary is an entity that is controlled due to the company being exposed or having rights, to variable returns from its involvement with the investee and has the ability to affect those returns through its power over the investee.

The results of any subsidiary acquired or disposed of during the year are included from the date control was obtained up to the date control ceased to exist. Where an acquisition of a subsidiary is made during the financial year, any excess or deficit of the purchase price compared to the fair value of the attributable net identifiable assets is recognised respectively as goodwill (excess) and accounted for as described in the goodwill accounting policy or in profit or loss (deficit) as a bargain purchase gain.

The financial statements of the subsidiaries are prepared for the same reporting period as Northam, using consistent accounting policies, and all intra-group transactions and balances are eliminated on consolidation.

Investments in subsidiaries are recognised at cost less accumulated impairment losses in the accounts of the company.

## 1.3 ASSOCIATES AND JOINT ARRANGEMENTS

An associate is an entity in which the group has significant influence. The group's investment in its associates is accounted for using the equity method of accounting. The Northam group defines any investment that is 20% or more of the voting power as a significant investment.

The group also has an interest in a joint arrangement which is classified as a joint venture in terms of IFRS 11 Joint arrangements. The group's investment in this joint venture is accounted for using the equity method of accounting.

Under the equity method, the investments in the associates and joint venture are carried in the statement of financial position at cost plus post acquisition changes in the group's share of net assets of the associate and joint venture. Goodwill relating to the associates is included in the carrying amount of the investment and is neither amortised nor individually tested for impairment. Profit or loss in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income reflects the share of the results of operations of the associates and joint venture. Where there has been a change recognised directly in other comprehensive income or equity of the associate or joint venture, the group recognises its share of any changes and recognises this, when applicable, in other comprehensive income or equity within the statement of changes in equity. Unrealised gains and losses resulting from transactions between the group and the associate or joint venture are eliminated to the extent of the interest in the associate or joint venture.

Where there is an additional investment in the associate or joint venture, the purchase price paid for the additional interest is added to the existing carrying amount of the associate or joint venture and the existing interest is not remeasured.

The share of profit of associates or joint venture is shown on the face of the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in profit or loss.

The financial statements of the associates and joint venture are prepared for the same reporting period as the parent company. Where necessary, adjustments are made to bring the accounting policies in line with those of the group.

After application of the equity method, the group determines whether it is necessary to recognise an impairment loss on the group's investment in its associates or joint venture. The group determines at each reporting date whether there is any objective evidence that the investment in the associate or joint venture is impaired. If this is the case, the group calculates the amount of impairment as the difference between the recoverable amount of the associate or joint venture and its carrying value and recognises the amount in profit or loss.

Upon loss of significant influence over the associate or joint control over the joint venture, the group measures and recognises any remaining investment at its fair value. Any difference between the carrying amount of the associate or joint venture upon loss of significant influence or joint control and the fair value of the retained investment and proceeds from disposal is recognised in profit or loss.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 1.4 BUSINESS COMBINATIONS AND GOODWILL

Business combinations are accounted for using the acquisition method. The cost of an acquisition is measured as the aggregate of the consideration transferred, measured at acquisition date fair value and the amount of any non-controlling interest in the acquiree. For each business combination, the acquirer measures the non-controlling interest in the acquiree either at fair value or at the proportionate share of the acquirer's identifiable net assets.

Identifiable assets acquired and liabilities and contingent liabilities assumed in a business combination are initially measured at fair value at the date of acquisition. If the cost of the acquisition is less than the fair value of the net assets of the subsidiary acquired, the difference is recognised directly in profit or loss. Goodwill arising on the acquisition of a subsidiary represents the excess of the cost of acquisition over the group's interest in the net fair value of the identifiable assets, liabilities and contingent liabilities of the subsidiary recognised at the date of acquisition. Goodwill is initially recognised as an asset at cost and is subsequently measured at cost less any accumulated impairment losses. Goodwill is not amortised.

Impairment is determined by assessing the recoverable amount of the cash-generating unit (or group of cash-generating units) that is expected to benefit from the combination. Where the recoverable amount of the cash-generating unit (or group of cash-generating units) is less than the carrying amount of the cash-generating unit (or group of cash-generating units) to which goodwill has been allocated, an impairment loss is recognised. Impairment losses relating to goodwill cannot be reversed in future periods.

Goodwill is tested for impairment annually or more frequently if events or circumstances indicates that it might be impaired.

### Business combination of entities under common control

Business combinations between entities under common control are accounted for using the pooling of interests method. Under this method the assets, liabilities and reserves of the acquired entity are recorded by the purchasing entity at their existing carrying values as recorded in the consolidated financial statements. As required by the pooling of interests method, the transfer is accounted for as if it occurred at the beginning of the financial year. The comparative amounts are not restated.



# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 1.5 PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT

### Mining assets

Mining assets are recorded at cost of acquisition less accumulated depreciation and accumulated impairment losses.

### Shafts, mining development and infrastructure costs

Shafts, mining development and infrastructure costs include expenditure incurred to develop new orebodies, to define further mineralisation in existing orebodies and to expand the capacity of the mine. Costs include interest capitalised during the construction period until commercial production is reached where development is financed by borrowings, and the net present value of future decommissioning costs. Depreciation is first charged on new mining ventures from the date on which the mining venture reaches commercial production levels. When a mine development project moves into the production phase, the capitalisation of certain mine development costs ceases, and costs are either regarded as part of the cost of inventory or expensed, except for costs which qualify for capitalisation relating to mining asset additions, improvements or new developments, underground mine development or mineable reserve development. Mine development costs are depreciated on a units of production basis based on resources which are revised annually.

### Metallurgical and refining plants

Metallurgical and refining plants, is depreciated using the units of production basis based on resources, which are revised annually. Where items of plant and equipment comprise separate, identifiable components that have differing useful lives, such components are depreciated according to their individual useful lives.

Research costs associated with the design of new items of plant and equipment, or improvements to existing items of plant and equipment, are expensed when incurred, unless the recognition criteria are met.

Items of property, plant and equipment that are withdrawn from use, or have no reasonable prospect of being recovered through use or sale, are regularly identified and impaired/scrapped.

### Decommissioning asset

The decommissioning asset is depreciated on the units of production basis, based on resources, which are revised annually.

The decommissioning asset is recognised and subsequent changes in the assumptions which impact the asset is reflected in the asset as set out in the decommissioning provision accounting policy. The decommissioning asset is included as part of the mining plant and equipment when considering depreciation, impairment and derecognition.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Mining properties and mineral resources

Mining properties and mineral resources, comprising mineral rights are recorded at cost of acquisition. Depreciation is first charged on new mining properties from the date on which the mining in respect of the mining property reaches commercial production levels. Mining properties are depreciated on a units of production basis based on resources which are revised annually.

Intangible assets acquired separately are measured on initial recognition at cost. Following initial recognition, intangible assets are carried at cost less any accumulated amortisation and any accumulated impairment losses. Internally generated intangible assets, excluding capitalised development costs, are not capitalised and expenditure is expensed in the year in which the expenditure is incurred.

The useful lives of intangible assets are assessed as either finite or indefinite.

Intangible assets with finite lives are amortised over the useful life and assessed for impairment whenever there is an indication that the intangible asset may be impaired. The amortisation period and the amortisation method for an intangible asset with a finite useful life are reviewed at least at each financial year end. Changes in the expected useful life or the expected pattern of consumption of future economic benefits embodied in the asset is accounted for by changing the amortisation period or method, as appropriate, and are treated as changes in accounting estimates. The amortisation expense of intangible assets with finite lives is recognised in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in the expense category consistent with the function of the intangible asset.

## Non-current assets held for sale

Northam group classifies non-current assets and disposal groups as held for sale if their carrying amounts will be recovered principally through a sale rather than through continuing use. Such non-current assets and disposal groups classified as held for sale are measured at the lower of their carrying amount and fair value less costs to sell. Costs to sell are the incremental costs directly attributable to the sale, excluding finance costs.

The criteria for held for sale classification is regarded as met only when the sale is highly probable and the asset or disposal group is available for immediate sale in its present condition. Management must be committed to the sale and the sale is expected within one year from the date of the classification.

Property, plant and equipment and intangible assets are not depreciated or amortised once classified as held for sale. Assets and liabilities classified as held for sale are presented separately as current items in the statement of financial position.

## Foreign currency prepayment

Northam currently has a prepayment relating to the manufacturing costs in terms of the aerial ropeway manufacturer agreement with a foreign supplier. The prepayment was initially accounted for at cost using the spot rate at transaction date. The construction of the ropeway will take place over a period of time and, there will be sign off by the constructor and Northam at each stage of completion. Northam will therefore capitalise these amounts to property, plant and equipment as and when construction and has been signed over by the contractor.

## Other assets

Office equipment, furniture and vehicles are depreciated using varying rates, ranging between 10% and 20% on a straight-line basis over their expected useful lives.

## Land and buildings

Land and buildings are recorded at cost of acquisition less accumulated impairment losses and is not depreciated. Buildings are depreciated on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life, which are assessed annually.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Impairment

At each reporting date, the group assesses whether there is any indication that an asset or cash-generating-unit may be impaired. Where an indicator of impairment exists or where annual impairment testing for an asset is required, the group makes a formal estimate of the asset or cash-generating-unit's recoverable amount. Where the carrying amount of an asset or cash-generating-unit exceeds its recoverable amount the asset is considered impaired and is written down to its recoverable amount and the difference is recognised in profit or loss. The recoverable amount is the higher of value in use and fair value less cost of disposal.

The value in use of mining assets is determined by applying a discount rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the asset to the anticipated cash flows for the remaining useful life of the assets.

The fair value less costs of disposal of non-mining assets is determined with reference to market values by making use of a valuation model.

The revised carrying amounts are depreciated on a systematic basis over the remaining useful lives of such affected assets.

Impairment losses are recognised in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in those expense categories consistent with the function of the impaired asset.

For assets excluding goodwill, an assessment is made at each reporting date as to whether there is any indication that previously recognised impairment losses may no longer exist or may have decreased. If such indication exists, the group estimates the asset's or cash-generating unit's recoverable amount. A previously recognised impairment loss is reversed only if there has been a change in the assumptions used to determine the asset's recoverable amount since the last impairment loss was recognised. The reversal is limited so that the carrying amount of the asset does not exceed its recoverable amount, nor exceed the carrying amount that would have been determined, net of depreciation, had no impairment loss been recognised for the asset in prior years. Such reversal is recognised in profit or loss.

## Derecognition

An item of property, plant and equipment is derecognised upon disposal or when no future economic benefits are expected from its use or disposal. Any gain or loss arising on derecognition of the asset (calculated as the difference between the net disposal proceeds and the carrying amount of the asset) is included in profit or loss in the year the asset is derecognised.

## Annual review of residual values, depreciation method and useful lives

The assets' residual values, depreciation methods and useful lives are reviewed, and adjusted prospectively, if appropriate, at each financial year end.

## Subsequent expenditure

Subsequent expenditure relating to an item of property, plant, equipment and mining properties is added to the carrying value of the asset when it is probable that future economic benefits will flow to the group. All other subsequent expenditure is recognised as an expense and included in profit or loss.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Exploration expenditure

The group expenses all exploration and evaluation expenditures until it is concluded that a future economic benefit is more likely than not of being realised, i.e. probable.

Exploration and evaluation expenditure on greenfields sites, being those where the group does not have any mineral deposits which are already being mined or developed, is expensed as incurred until a feasibility study has been completed, after which the expenditure is capitalised if the feasibility study demonstrates that future economic benefits are probable.

Exploration and evaluation expenditure on brownfields sites, being those adjacent to mineral deposits which are already being mined or developed, is expensed as incurred until management is able to demonstrate that future economic benefits are probable through the completion of a feasibility study. Costs relating to development activities as well as mineral resources bought are capitalised to mine development asset.

Exploration and evaluation expenditure relating to extensions of mineral deposits which are already being mined or developed, including expenditure on the definition of mineralisation of such mineral deposits, is capitalised as a mine development cost following a mine planning exercise equivalent to a feasibility study.

## 1.6 Land and Township development

The assets are recognised on the statement of financial position in accordance with IAS 2. We are comfortable that a buyer will always be found due to the housing requirements around our mines. Because these assets are normally held for a period of longer than 12 months, they are however deemed to be non-current assets. These assets are held at the lower of cost and net realisable value.

Net realisable value tests are performed at each reporting date and represent the current sales price of the product, less estimated costs to complete production and bring the product to sale. Where the time value of money is material, these future prices and costs to complete are discounted.

Land and township development, which is an initiative in order to assist the group's employees to acquire their own affordable housing, is initially recognised at cost, being the fair value of the consideration given and including acquisition charges. Cost is determined on the basis of land acquisition, development and housing construction cost. Land and township development is derecognised when the risks and rewards of ownership of the property transfers to the employees.

Northam's main business is not the development of properties but is obligated under South Africa mining legislation to offer certain of its employee's house ownership as part of their benefits. To that end it constructs houses which are sold to employees on favourable terms. The houses are mainly for employees but third parties can also acquire these properties. Therefore, the main aim of the disclosure of the land and township development activities provided is qualitative by nature, i.e. social and community advancement and employee benefits. The main business of the group is mining platinum group metals.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 1.7 Financial Instruments

Financial instruments recognised on the statement of financial position include investments, cash and cash equivalents, long term receivables, trade accounts receivable, trade accounts payable, borrowings and derivative instruments. These are recognised when the group becomes party to the contractual agreements. All financial instruments are initially recorded at fair value and in the case of financial instruments not at fair value through profit or loss, directly attributable transaction costs. Transaction costs are amortised based on the straight line method.

### Investments

Investments acquired for the purpose of selling in the near term are classified as held for trading and is part of the fair value through profit or loss category of financial assets. Other investments are classified as available for sale or held-to-maturity, depending on the nature of the investment.

Preference shares held are classified as available for sale investments even though they are debt instruments and interest thereon is recognised in profit or loss using the effective interest rate method.

After initial recognition, investments, which are classified as available for sale, are re-measured at fair value with unrealised gains or losses recognised as other comprehensive income until the investment is sold, collected or otherwise disposed of, or until the investment is determined to be impaired when it is recognised in profit or loss.

Gains or losses on investments held for trading are recognised in profit or loss.

After initial recognition, investments at amortised cost are subsequently carried at amortised cost using the effective interest method less any allowance for impairment. Gains and losses are recognised in profit or loss when the investments are derecognised or impaired, as well as through the amortisation process. Interest income on these investments is recognised in profit or loss.

### Loans and receivables

Loans and receivables are non-derivative financial assets with fixed or determinable payments that are not quoted in an active market and include trade and other receivables, long term receivables and cash and cash equivalents. After initial recognition receivables are subsequently carried at amortised cost using the effective interest method less any allowance for impairment. Gains and losses are recognised in profit or loss when the receivables are derecognised or impaired, as well as through the amortisation process.

### Cash and cash equivalents

Cash and cash equivalents comprise demand and time deposits with banking institutions and money market instruments readily convertible to known amounts of cash subject to insignificant risk of changes in value. Cash and cash equivalents are subsequently carried at amortised cost.

Negotiable instruments are recorded initially at the fair value of the consideration given. Subsequent measurement is at amortised cost which is incorporated in the determination of investment income.

### Trade and other payables

Trade and other payables are stated at the recognised obligation less payments made and adjustments made to reflect the fair value of the expected outflow of economic resources and are subsequently carried at amortised cost.

Gains and losses are recognised in profit or loss when the liabilities are derecognised as well as through the amortisation process.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Borrowings

After initial recognition, loans and borrowings are subsequently measured at amortised cost using the effective interest method. Amortised cost is calculated by taking into account any issue costs, and any discount or premium on issue.

Gains and losses are recognised in profit or loss when the liabilities are derecognised as well as through the amortisation process.

Accrued dividends on preference shares are recognised as finances charges.

## Impairment of financial instruments

The group assesses at each reporting date whether a financial asset or group of financial assets is impaired.

### *Assets carried at amortised cost*

If there is objective evidence that an impairment loss on loans and receivables carried at amortised cost has been incurred, the amount of the loss is measured as the difference between the asset's carrying amount and the present value of estimated future cash flows (excluding future expected credit losses that have not been incurred) discounted at the financial asset's original effective interest rate (i.e. the effective interest rate computed at initial recognition). Evidence of impairment may include indications that the debtors or a group of debtors is experiencing significant financial difficulty, default or delinquency in interest or principal payments, the probability that they will enter bankruptcy or other financial reorganisation and where observable data indicate that there is a measurable decrease in estimated future cash flows. The carrying amount of the asset is reduced through use of an allowance account. The amount of the loss is recognised in profit or loss.

Impaired debts are derecognised when they are assessed as uncollectible.

## Derecognition of financial instruments

### *Financial assets*

A financial asset (or, where applicable a part of a financial asset or part of a group of similar financial assets) is derecognised when: the rights to receive cash flows from the asset have expired; the group has transferred its rights to receive cash flows from the asset or has assumed an obligation to pay the received cash flows in full without material delay to a third party under a "pass through" arrangement; and either: (a) the group has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of the asset or (b) the group has neither transferred nor retained substantially all the risks and rewards of the asset, but has transferred control of the asset.

### *Financial liabilities*

A financial liability is derecognised when the obligation under the liability is discharged or cancelled or expires. Where an existing financial liability is replaced by another from the same lender on substantially different terms, or the terms of an existing liability are substantially modified, such an exchange or modification is treated as a derecognition of the original liability and the recognition of a new liability, and the difference in the respective carrying amounts is recognised in profit or loss.

## Financial guarantee contracts

Financial guarantee contracts issued by the company are those contracts that require a payment to be made to reimburse the holder for a loss it incurs because the specified debtor fails to make a payment when due in accordance with the terms of a debt instrument. Financial guarantee contracts are recognised initially as a liability at fair value, adjusted for transaction costs that are directly attributable to the issuance of the guarantee. Subsequently, the liability is measured at the higher of the best estimate of the expenditure required to settle the present obligation at the reporting date and the amount recognised less cumulative amortisation. Amortisation is based on the total value of underlying liability still outstanding, as this better reflects the pattern of how the company provides the guarantee.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 1.8 Inventories

### Consumable stores

Consumable stores consist of consumable and maintenance stores and are valued at the lower of cost or net realisable value. Cost is determined on the weighted average cost basis. Consumable stores are under continual review and are written down in regard to age, condition and utility.

### Metal on hand

Stocks of the three major platinum group elements, gold (4E), either in refined or in process form, are valued at the lower of cost of production (including the value of any purchased concentrate) or net realisable value. Production costs include an appropriate portion of overhead expenses. Cost is determined on the three month weighted average basis.

The average cost of normal production includes total costs incurred on mining and refining, including depreciation, less net revenue from the sale of by-products, including chrome, allocated to main products based on units produced under normal production.

Costs incurred in the production process, are appropriately accumulated as stockpiles, metal in process and product inventories. Platinum, palladium, rhodium and gold (4E) are treated as main products and other platinum group and base metals produced as by-products, including chrome, which are not classified as inventory.

Stockpiles are measured by estimating the stockpiled tonnes, the number of contained 4E ounces based on assay data, and the estimated recovery percentage based on the expected processing method, but only if the stockpiles are considered material. Stockpile tonnages are verified by periodic surveys.

In process and final inventories are carried at the lowest of average cost of normal production and net realisable value.

Net realisable value tests are performed, on a monthly basis and represent the expected sales price of the product based on prevailing spot metal prices at the reporting date, less estimated costs to complete production and bring the product to sale.

## 1.9 Provisions

### Decommissioning provision

Provision is made for the present value of the estimated future decommissioning costs at the end of the mine's life. A decommissioning asset is recognised as part of the underlying property, plant and equipment.

With regards to the provision, the estimates are discounted at a pre-tax discount rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the liability.

The increase in the decommissioning provision due to the passage of time is recognised as a finance cost in profit or loss. Other changes in the carrying value of the provision subsequent to initial recognition are adjusted in the determination of the carrying value of the decommissioning asset as opposed to being recognised in profit or loss. If the adjustment result in an addition to the decommissioning asset consideration is given as to whether this is an indication that the new carrying amount of the asset may not be fully recoverable. If it is such an indication, the asset is tested for impairment by estimating its recoverable amount in accordance with the respective accounting policies.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Provision for restoration costs

Provision is made for the estimated cost to be incurred on long term environmental obligations, comprising expenditure on pollution control and closure over the estimated life of the mine.

The estimates are discounted at a pre-tax discount rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money. The increase in the restoration provision due to the passage of time is recognised as a finance cost in profit or loss. In assessing the future liability, no account is taken of the potential proceeds from the sale of assets and metals from the plant clean-up.

The future liability is reviewed regularly and adjusted as appropriate for new facts and changes in legislation. The cost of ongoing programmes to prevent and control pollution and rehabilitate the environment is recognised as an expense when incurred.

## Environmental rehabilitation fund

The group may contribute to a dedicated trust fund, the Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund ("the Fund"), to fund the expenditure on future decommissioning and restoration. Income earned by the fund is credited to the group's profit or loss in the period to which it relates.

The group controls the trust and therefore consolidates it.

The assets of the Fund are separately administered and the group's right of access to these funds is restricted.

## Other provisions

Provisions are recognised where the group has a present legal or constructive obligation as a result of a past event, a reliable estimate of the obligation can be made and it is probable that an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits will be required to settle the obligation.

## 1.10 Foreign currencies

The functional and presentation currency of the group is the South African rand. Transactions in foreign currencies are translated into South African rand at the rates of exchange ruling at the transaction date. Monetary assets or liabilities denominated in foreign currencies are translated at rates prevailing at the reporting date. Non-monetary items that are measured in terms of historical cost in a foreign currency are translated using the exchange rate as at the date of the initial transaction. Profits or losses arising on the translation of foreign currencies, whether realised or unrealised, are credited or charged to profit or loss.



# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 1.11 Revenue recognition

Revenue is recognised to the extent it is probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the group and the amount of revenue can be measured reliably. Revenue is measured at the fair value of the amounts received or receivable net of value added tax, cash discounts and rebates.

### Metal sales

Revenue from the sale of metal is accounted for when the risks and rewards of ownership have passed and is recorded at the invoiced amounts with an adjustment for provisional pricing at each reporting date relating to metals where final assays are not yet available. Adjustments, in respect of final assayed quantities and/ or prices, arising between the date of recognition of the revenue and the date of settlement are adjusted against revenue in the period in which the adjustment arises.

### Income from the sale of township land

Income from the sale of township land which is sold under suspensive sale agreements is recognised when the substantial risks and rewards of ownership have been transferred to the purchaser.

### Sundry income

Sundry income is recognised when the right to receive payment has been established. Investment income is recognised as it accrues, using the effective interest rate method. Included in sundry income for the group is treatment charges received from third parties.

## 1.12 Borrowing costs

Borrowing costs that are directly attributable to the acquisition, construction or development of qualifying assets that require a substantial period of time to prepare for their intended use are capitalised. Capitalisation is suspended when the active development is interrupted and ceases when the activities necessary to prepare the asset for its intended use are complete. Other borrowing costs are recognised as an expense when incurred.

Where funds are borrowed specifically to finance a project, the amount capitalised represents the actual borrowing costs incurred. Where surplus funds are available for a short term from funds borrowed specifically to finance a project, the income generated from the temporary investment of such amounts is also capitalised and deducted from the total capitalised borrowing cost. Where the funds used to finance a project form part of general borrowings, the amount capitalised is calculated using a weighted average of the borrowing costs applicable to the borrowings of the group that are outstanding during the period.

## 1.13 Employee benefits

### Short-term employee benefits

Remuneration to employees in respect of services rendered during a reporting period is recognised as an expense in that reporting period. Accruals are made for accumulated leave and are measured at the amount that the group expects to pay when the leave is used.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Equity compensation plans

### *Share Option Scheme*

Options granted to employees in terms of the rules of the Northam Share Option Scheme (the Scheme) are valued at the grant date using the Binomial Model. The value so determined is recognised as an expense within operating costs, together with a corresponding increase in the equity compensation reserve, evenly over the period between the grant date and the date on which the relevant employees become fully entitled to the award (vesting date).

The cumulative expense recognised for these options at each reporting date until the vesting date reflects the best estimate of the value attributable to the number of options that will ultimately vest. The dilutive effect of outstanding options is reflected as additional share dilution in the computation of diluted earnings per share and diluted headline earnings per share.

Where employees exercise options in terms of the rules of the Scheme, shares are issued to them as beneficial owners. In exchange, employees pay in cash a consideration equal to the price specified in the option allocated to them. The nominal value of the shares is credited to share capital and the difference between the nominal value and the price of the cash consideration credited to share premium.

Options granted to an employee are forfeited in the event of the employee resigning or being dismissed. The accumulated credit to the equity compensation reserve in respect of options that have lapsed or been forfeited after their vesting date is transferred to retained earnings.

### *Share Incentive Plan*

Awards granted to employees in terms of the rules of the Northam Share Incentive Plan (the Plan) are measured at fair value based on market prices at the date of grant (measurement date).

The shares awarded in terms of the rules of the Plan comprise: retention shares, which vest after three years with no performance criteria, and performance shares, which also vest after three years. The final number of performance shares that the relevant employee will receive will be subject to certain performance criteria being met. Retention shares awarded prior to November 2014 vest after two years with no performance criteria.

The group initially measures the cost of cash-settled transactions with employees using a market value model to determine the fair value of the liability incurred. Estimating fair value for share-based payment transactions requires determination of the most appropriate valuation model, which is dependent on the terms and conditions of the grant. This estimate also requires determination of the most appropriate inputs to the valuation model including the expected life of the share option, volatility and dividend yield and making assumptions about them. For cash-settled share-based payment transactions, the liability needs to be re-measured at the end of each reporting period up to the date of settlement, with any changes in fair value recognised in profit or loss. This requires a reassessment of the estimates used at the end of each reporting period. The assumptions and models used for estimating fair value for share-based payment transactions are disclosed in the financial statements.

### *Equity settled instruments in respect to the BEE transaction*

Equity settled share-based payment expense relates to the BEE transaction and vested on the grant date. The value of the expense was determined by way of a Black-Scholes option model.

## Retirement benefits

Eligible employees are members of various defined contribution schemes. Employer contributions are recognised as an expense during the period in which the employees' services are rendered.

## Medical benefits

Employer contributions in respect of current medical benefits are recognised as an expense during the period in which the employees' services are rendered.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Post-retirement medical costs

Eligible employees are members of a defined contribution scheme established to assist those employees to meet post-retirement medical costs.

Employer contributions are recognised as an expense during the period in which the employees' services are rendered. These contributions cease when the employees' service terminate.

## Toro employee empowerment trust

The Toro employee empowerment trust ("the Trust") was established for the benefit of eligible Zondereinde employees. Northam contributes 4% of its after tax profits to the Trust where after eligible employees will receive payment at the end of each five-year cycle. The amount of this cash to be distributed is based on the valuation of the fund and Northam does not guarantee any values over and above what is included in the Trust and managed accordingly by the investment manager.

Since the cash distribution is payable to employees after the end of the period in which the related services are rendered and it is not a post-employment benefit or a termination benefit, the Trust is accounted for as an "Other Long Term Employee Benefit" in terms of IAS 19. The benefits payable to employees are therefore measured using the Projected Unit Credit Method.

Independent actuarial valuations are conducted annually. Re-measurements, comprising actuarial gains and losses arising as a result of experience adjustments and/or the effects of changes in actuarial assumptions, the effect of changes to the asset ceiling and the return on plan assets (excluding interest) are recognised immediately in profit or loss when they occur. Any increase in the present value of plan liabilities expected to arise from employee service during the period is charged to operating profit. Net interest is determined by applying the discount rate at the beginning of the year to the net defined liability or asset.

Past-service cost is recognised immediately in profit or loss in the period to the extent that benefits are already vested and otherwise is amortised on a straight-line basis over the average period until the benefits become vested.

The defined benefit asset or liability comprises the present value of the defined benefit obligation less the fair value of plan assets out of which the obligations are to be settled. Plan assets are assets (cash) that are held by the Trust and are not available to the creditors of the group.

## 1.14 Leases

### Group as lessee

A finance lease transfers substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of an asset to the group.

Assets subject to finance leases are capitalised as property, plant and equipment at the lower of the fair value of the leased asset at inception of the lease or the present value of the minimum lease payments with the related lease obligation recognised at the same amount. Capitalised leased assets are depreciated over the estimated useful lives. However, if there is no reasonable certainty that the group will obtain ownership by the end of the lease term, the asset is depreciated over the shorter of the estimated useful life of the asset and the lease term.

Finance lease payments are allocated between finance costs and the capital repayment so as to achieve a constant rate of interest on the remaining balance of the liability.

Leases in respect of which the lessor retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of an asset are classified as operating leases. Operating lease payments are recognised as an expense in profit or loss on a straight-line basis over the period of the lease.

### Group as lessor

Leases in respect of which the group does not transfer substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of an asset are classified as operating leases. Operating lease payments relates to rental income received from Booyssendal relating to mining properties are recognised as revenue in profit or loss on a straight-line basis over the period of the lease.

# ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 1.15 Taxation

### Current tax

The charge for current tax is based on the results for the year, as adjusted for by items that are exempt or disallowed, and is calculated using the enacted tax rates, at the reporting date.

Where items are credited or charged directly to equity or other comprehensive income the tax effect is also recognised within equity or other comprehensive income as appropriate.

### Deferred tax

Deferred income tax is provided using the liability method on temporary differences at the reporting date between the tax bases of assets and liabilities and their carrying amounts for financial reporting purposes. Deferred income tax liabilities are recognised for all taxable temporary differences, except: Where the “initial recognition exception” applies; and in respect of “outside” temporary differences relating to subsidiaries, associates and joint arrangements.

Deferred tax assets are recognised for all deductible temporary differences, carry forward of unused tax credits and unused tax losses, to the extent that it is probable that future taxable profits will be available, against which the deductible temporary differences, carry forward of unused tax credits and unused tax losses can be utilised in the foreseeable future except: Where the “initial recognition exception” applies; and in respect of “outside” temporary differences relating to subsidiaries, associates and joint arrangements.

The carrying amount of deferred income tax assets is reviewed at each reporting date and reduced to the extent that it is no longer probable that sufficient taxable profit will be available to allow all or part of the deferred income tax asset to be utilised. Unrecognised deferred income tax assets are reassessed at each reporting date and are recognised to the extent that it has become probable that future taxable profit will allow the deferred tax asset to be recovered.

Deferred income tax assets and liabilities are measured at the tax rate that are expected to apply in the year when the asset is realised or the liability is settled, based on tax rates (and tax laws) that have been enacted or substantively enacted at the reporting date.

Deferred income tax relating to items recognised directly in equity or other comprehensive income is recognised in equity or other comprehensive income as appropriate and not in profit or loss.

Deferred income tax assets and liabilities are offset, if a legally enforceable right exists to set off current tax assets against current income tax liabilities and when they relate to income taxes levied by the same taxation authority and taxable entity.

### Dividends withholding tax

The group withholds dividends tax on behalf of its shareholders at a rate of 20% effective 22 February 2017 (previously 15%) on dividends declared. Amounts withheld are not recognised as part of the group's tax charge but rather as part of the dividend paid recognised directly in equity.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 2. Key accounting estimates, assumptions and judgements

The preparation of the company and group's financial statements requires management to make judgements, estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of revenue, expenses, assets and liabilities, and the disclosure of contingent liabilities at the reporting date.

However, uncertainty about these assumptions and estimates could result in outcomes that could require a material adjustment to the carrying amount of assets or liabilities affected in future.

These estimates and assumptions are continually evaluated and are based on historical experience and expectations of future events that are believed to be reasonable under the circumstances.

### 2.1 Impairment of assets

The group assesses, at each reporting date, whether there is an indication that an asset may be impaired. If any indication exists, or when annual impairment testing for an asset is required, the group estimates the asset's recoverable amount. An asset's recoverable amount is the higher of an asset's or cash generating unit's (CGU) fair value less costs of disposal and its value in use. The recoverable amount is determined for an individual asset, unless the asset does not generate cash inflows that are largely independent of those from other assets or groups of assets. When the carrying amount of an asset or CGU exceeds its recoverable amount, the asset is considered impaired and is written down to its recoverable amount.

Due to the vertically integrated operations of the group and the fact that there is no active market for the group's intermediate products, the group's operations as a whole constitute the smallest CGU.

In assessing fair value less cost of disposal, the estimated future cash flows are discounted to their present value using a discount rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the asset. In determining fair value less costs of disposal, recent market transactions are taken into account. If no such transactions can be identified, an appropriate valuation model is used. These calculations are corroborated by valuation multiples, quoted share prices for publicly traded companies or other available fair value indicators.

Fair value is the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. Fair value for mineral assets is generally determined as the present value of estimated future cash flows arising from the continued use of the asset, which includes estimates such as the cost of future expansion plans and eventual disposal, using assumptions that an independent market participant may take into account. Cash flows are discounted by an appropriate discount rate to determine the net present value.

The group bases its impairment calculation on detailed budgets and forecast calculations. These budgets and forecast calculations generally cover a period of five years. A long-term growth rate is calculated and applied to project future cash flows after the fifth year.

Management uses a fair value less cost of disposal model to determine the recoverable value of any CGU.

Impairment testing requires management to make significant judgements concerning the existence of impairment indicators, identification of CGUs, remaining useful lives of assets and estimates of projected cash flows and fair value less costs of disposal. Management's analysis of CGUs involves an assessment of a group of assets' ability to independently generate cash inflows and involves analysing the extent to which different products make use of the same assets. Management's judgement is also required when assessing whether a previously recognised impairment loss should be reversed.

The determined value in use of the CGU is most sensitive to the platinum price, the US dollar exchange rate and the discount rate. Other judgements made by management include, total capital expenditure, operating costs, production levels and inflation factors.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

The following key assumptions were made by management, which are based on management interpretation of market forecast and the future.

|                                              | Group  |        | Company |        |
|----------------------------------------------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
|                                              | 2017   | 2016   | 2017    | 2016   |
|                                              | R000   | R000   | R000    | R000   |
| Long term real platinum price USD per ounce  | 1 417  | 1 433  | 1 417   | 1 433  |
| Long term real palladium price USD per ounce | 1 127  | 896    | 1 127   | 896    |
| Long term real rhodium price USD per ounce   | 1 058  | 1 254  | 1 058   | 1 254  |
| Long term real gold price USD per ounce      | 1 213  | 1 209  | 1 213   | 1 209  |
| Long term real exchange rate USD             | R13.88 | R14.16 | R13.88  | R14.16 |
| Long term real post tax discount rate        | 12.20% | 10.50% | 12.20%  | 10.50% |

Management also estimated the recoverable amount of mineral assets that the group is not currently developing. For those assets, the recoverable amount is calculated on a fair value less cost of disposal basis taking into account earlier binding sales agreements between market participants as well as the market capitalisation of platinum exploration companies relative to their resources base.

## 2.2 Mine rehabilitation provision

The group's mining and exploration activities are subject to various laws and regulations governing the protection of the environment. Management estimates, with the assistance of independent experts, the expected total spend for the rehabilitation, management and remediation of negative environmental impacts at closure at the end of the lives of the mines and processing operations. Estimated long-term mine rehabilitation costs are based on the group's environmental policy, taking into account current technological, environmental and regulatory requirements.

The estimation of future costs of environmental obligations relating to decommissioning and rehabilitation is particularly complex and requires management to make estimates, assumptions and judgements relating to the future. These estimates are dependent on a number of factors including assumptions around environmental legislation, life-of-mine estimates and discount rates.

The group makes full provision for the future commercial cost of rehabilitating mine sites and related production facilities on a discounted basis at the time of developing the mines and installing and using those facilities. The rehabilitation provision represents the present value of rehabilitation costs relating to mine sites.

Assumptions based on the current economic environment have been made, which management believes are a reasonable basis upon which to estimate the future liability. However, actual rehabilitation costs will ultimately depend upon future market prices for the necessary rehabilitation works required that will reflect market conditions at the relevant time. Furthermore, the timing of rehabilitation is likely to depend on when the mines cease to produce at economically viable rates. This, in turn, will depend upon future platinum group metal prices, which are inherently uncertain.

The net present value of current decommissioning and restoration costs are based on the following assumptions:

|                                        | Group  |        | Company |        |
|----------------------------------------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
|                                        | 2017   | 2016   | 2017    | 2016   |
| Long term South African inflation rate | 8.71%  | 8.71%  | 8.71%   | 8.71%  |
| Long term real discount rate           | 10.62% | 10.62% | 10.62%  | 10.62% |

The ultimate rehabilitation costs are uncertain, and cost estimates can vary in response to many factors, including estimates of the extent and costs of rehabilitation activities, technological changes, regulatory changes, cost increases as compared to the inflation rates and changes in discount rates. These uncertainties may result in future actual expenditure differing from the amounts currently provided. Therefore, significant estimates and assumptions are made in determining the provision for mine rehabilitation. As a result, there could be significant adjustments to the provisions established which would affect future financial results.

Cash flows relating to rehabilitation costs will occur at the end of the life of the operations which is currently determined as the expiry date of the mining licenses.

Refer to note 24 relating to the provision for the rehabilitation and decommission liability of the group.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 2.3 Useful lives and residual values of property, plant and equipment

Residual values, useful lives and methods of depreciation are reviewed at each reporting period and adjusted prospectively, if appropriate.

The group's assets, excluding mining development and infrastructure assets, are depreciated over their expected useful lives which are reviewed annually to ensure that the useful lives continue to be appropriate. In assessing useful lives, technological innovation, product life cycles, physical condition of the assets and maintenance programmes are taken into consideration.

Mining development and infrastructure assets are depreciated on a unit-of-production basis. The calculation of the unit-of-production depreciation is based on forecasted production which is calculated using numerous assumptions. Any changes in these assumptions may have an impact on the calculation.

Refer to note 4 relating to property, plant and equipment and note 5 for mining properties and mineral resources.

## 2.4 Ore reserve and mineral resource estimates (life of mine)

The estimation of reserves impacts the depreciation of property, plant and equipment, the recoverable amount of property, plant and equipment and the timing of rehabilitation expenditure.

Ore reserves are estimates of the amount of ore that can be economically and legally extracted from the group's mining properties. The group estimates its ore reserves and mineral resources, based on information compiled by appropriately qualified persons, relating to the geological data on the size, depth and shape of the ore body, and require complex geological judgements to interpret the data. The estimation of recoverable reserves is based upon factors such as estimates of foreign exchange rates, commodity prices, future capital requirements, and production costs along with geological assumptions and judgements made in estimating the size and grade of the ore body. Changes in the reserve or resources estimates may impact upon the carrying value of exploration and evaluation assets, mine properties, property, plant and equipment, provision for rehabilitation, recognition of deferred tax assets (if any), and depreciation and amortisation charges. The group estimates and reports ore reserves in line with the principles contained in the South African Code for Reporting of Mineral Resources and Mineral Reserves of 2007, revised in 2016 (SAMREC 2016).

Cognisance is also given to the mining license tenure of the operations when the life of mine calculation is performed.

The above impacts both the provision for rehabilitation and decommission as detailed in note 24 as well as the depreciation calculation for property, plant and equipment items (note 4) as well as mining properties and mineral resources included in note 5.

## 2.5 Production start date for mine developments

The group assesses the stage of a mine under construction to determine when the mine moves into the production phase. This being when the mine is substantially complete and ready for its intended use. The criteria used to assess the start date are determined based on the unique nature of that mine's construction project, such as the complexity of the project and its location. The group considers various relevant criteria to assess when the production phase is considered to have commenced. At this point, all related amounts are reclassified from "pre-production development expenditure" to "property, plant and equipment". Some of the criteria used to identify the production start date include, but are not limited to:

- Level of capital expenditure incurred compared to the original construction cost estimate
- Ability to produce metal in saleable form (within specification)
- Ability to sustain ongoing production of metal

When a mine development project moves into the production phase, the capitalisation of certain mine development costs ceases and costs are either regarded as forming part of the cost of inventory or expensed, except for costs that qualify for capitalisation relating to mining asset additions or improvements, underground mine development or mineable reserve development. It is also at this point that depreciation commences.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 2.6 Capitalisation of borrowing costs

IAS 23 requires borrowing costs to be capitalised if they are directly attributable to the acquisition, construction or production of a qualifying asset (whether or not the funds have been borrowed specifically). These borrowing costs are included in the cost of the asset; all other borrowing costs are recognised as an expense in the period in which they occur.

Recognising that it may not always be easy to identify a direct relationship between particular borrowings and a qualifying asset and to determine the borrowings that could otherwise have been avoided, the standard includes separate requirements for specific borrowings and general borrowings.

IAS 23 defines a qualifying asset as an asset that necessarily takes a substantial period of time to get ready for its intended use. IAS 23 does not define substantial period of time and this will therefore require the exercise of judgement after considering the specific facts and circumstances. Northam regards an asset that normally takes twelve months or more to be ready for its intended use to be a qualifying asset.

On a consolidated basis, Northam has funding which was obtained through the issue of preference shares through Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited. Publicly Northam has committed that this funding will be used to either grow the group through internal projects or through acquisition of shallow long life assets. The preference shares accrue dividends at the South African prime interest rate plus 350 basis points (currently 14%).

Domestic Medium Term Debt Notes were also issued. The first tranche was issued on 11 May 2016 for a period of 5 years to the value of R175.0 million at a fixed coupon rate of 13.5%. Interest is payable on a bi-annual basis in May and November of every year. Per the Application Pricing Supplement, the funds are used for general corporate purposes. The interest relating to these notes were capitalised to qualifying assets relating to the Zondereinde operations.

In addition, on 9 June 2016 a second tranche of R250.0 million were issued at a floating rate of the 3-month JIBAR plus 390 basis points. Interest is payable on a quarterly basis in August, November, February and May of every year for a three year period. These notes were issued to the IDC. The funds per the Application Pricing Supplement are to be used towards partially financing the development of existing and future mines and related infrastructure at the Booyseendal operations. Interest on the R250.0 million DMTN will be capitalised on the Booyseendal assets on consolidation as these funds were specifically provided for expansion on the Booyseendal project.

The weighted average cost of borrowings is capitalised to the monthly capital costs incurred on qualifying assets, with regards to general borrowings.

With regards to what Northam classifies as qualifying assets, any asset that takes more than 12 months to be ready for its intended use will be classified as a qualifying assets. Currently this will include the deepening project at both operations, the smelter complex at Zondereinde and the development of the Booyseendal South project.

No finance costs were capitalised in the previous year.



# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 2.7 Transaction with Northam's precious metal refiner

Northam agreed terms to extend its co-operation agreement with Heraeus Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG (Heraeus) and Heraeus South Africa Proprietary Limited (HSA).

In terms of the agreement Heraeus will contribute €20.0 million to expand the capacity of Northam's existing smelter, through the construction of a 20MW second furnace at the Zondereinde metallurgical complex. The total cost of the expansion is estimated at R750.0 million.

The agreement also provides for the renewal of the current offtake and toll refining agreements with Heraeus.

Heraeus' capital contribution is fixed according to a progress schedule, and paid in two tranches of €10.0 million each, the first of which was received during June 2016. The furnace is planned for commissioning by the end of the 2017 calendar year. In return, Northam has renewed its toll refining agreement with Heraeus and HSA for a period of 20 years on competitive terms. Northam also undertakes to sell up to 40% of its production to Heraeus or HSA at market prices.

The first €10.0 million received from Heraeus was recognised as a liability, as Northam is obligated to refund the amount to Heraeus if, Northam does not commission the furnace on time. Once the furnace is commissioned and the second €10.0 million is received, the €20.0 million will be deducted from the cost of the smelter as the value contributed by Heraeus is effectively considered a "rebate" in terms of IAS 16.16(a). The €10.0 million was revalued to the closing Euro exchange rate at year end.

R9.4 million will be paid annually by Northam for product development on 1 July of every year, commencing on 1 July 2016 for 20 years. A liability was recognised at contract inception, being 16 April 2016. The liability was measured at the present value of the R9.4 million payments over 20 years using the prevailing prime interest rate. The contra side of the entry was included as an addition cost to the furnace. The reason for this is that the contract will be entered into for the construction of the smelter and thus the liability is viewed as a cost incurred in the construction of the smelter. By adding the amount to the cost of the smelter, depreciation will be higher each year, thereby increasing the cost of goods produced.

Refer to note 4 Property, plant and equipment as well as note 25 which details the amounts payable to Heraeus.

## 2.8 Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited

Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited (Zambezi) was created and designed for the sole purpose of providing Northam with BEE credentials and as a structure to hold the listed BEE preference shares. If Northam does not comply with the HDSA requirements in the Mining Charter they will not be able to retain their mining rights. Northam is able to direct the strategic direction of Zambezi and as per the subscription and relationship agreement between the two companies, Zambezi's memorandum of incorporation may not be amended or replaced without Northam's prior written consent. Northam assumes full responsibility for the administration of Zambezi as well as any costs incurred by Zambezi up to a certain limit. Furthermore, Northam provides a guarantee for Zambezi's obligation in respect of the preference shares. All these points indicate that Northam has been involved from the inception of the transaction, to ensure that the design and operation of Zambezi achieves the purpose for which it was created.

In terms of the transaction, an "N" share was issued to Northam, which gave them the right to implement mitigating action should Zambezi not comply with certain undertakings as per the transaction's agreements and in other limited instances aimed at maintaining the integrity of the transaction at all times. Zambezi can also not dispose of the Northam ordinary shares without the prior consent of Northam. Northam has significant exposure to the variable returns of Zambezi, through the creation and maintenance of the BEE credentials during the 10-year lock-in period as well as through the guarantee provided by Northam. The decision making power of Zambezi's board of directors is restricted to maintaining Northam's BEE credentials and funding arrangements.

All of these factors have been considered in determining that even though Northam Platinum Limited does not have majority of the voting rights in Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited it still has control over the entity.

Refer to note 28 detailing the preference share liability consolidated into the Northam group.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 2.9 Toro Employee Empowerment Trust

The company entered into an agreement with the representative unions at the Northam's Zondereinde mine in terms of which the company has undertaken to contribute 4% of Northam company's after tax profits to the Toro Employee Empowerment Trust, providing Northam's Zondereinde mine unskilled and semi-skilled employees an opportunity to participate in the profits of the company. In the event of the company making a loss, no contributions are made to the trust. Eligible employees will receive payment at the end of each five-year cycle, starting from September 2013. The amount of the cash to be distributed is based on the valuation of the fund and Northam Platinum Limited does not guarantee any values over and above what is included in the Trust and managed accordingly by the investment manager.

The Toro Trust is accounted for as an "other long term employee benefits" in terms of IAS 19.

In applying the projected unit credit method, the following estimates were used:

|               | Group |       | Company |       |
|---------------|-------|-------|---------|-------|
|               | 2017  | 2016  | 2017    | 2016  |
| Discount rate | 7.50% | 7.80% | 7.50%   | 7.80% |
| Interest rate | 7.70% | 8.20% | 7.70%   | 8.20% |

The rate used to discount pre-retirement benefit obligations should be determined by reference to market yields at the reporting date on high quality corporate bonds. In countries where there is no deep market in such bonds, the market yields on government bonds should be used. There is however no deep market in corporate bonds in South Africa and as such reference to the nominal bond curve, as compiled by the JSE has been used. In terms of the accounting standards historical yields are less important and we consequently consider it appropriate to use the discount rate as noted above per annum.

Refer to note 33 detailing the movements included in the Toro Trust in the current year.

## 2.10 Taxes

Deferred tax assets are recognised for unused tax losses to the extent that it is probable that taxable profit will be available against which the losses can be utilised. Significant management judgement is required to determine the amount of deferred tax assets that can be recognised, based upon the likely timing and the level of future taxable profits together with future tax planning strategies.

Estimation is required to determine whether deferred tax assets are recognised in the statement of financial position. Deferred tax assets, including those arising from unutilised tax losses, require the group to assess the likelihood that the group will generate sufficient taxable earnings in future periods, in order to utilise recognised deferred tax assets.

Judgements are also required in respect of the application of existing tax laws in each jurisdiction. Assumptions about the generation of future taxable profits depend on management's estimates of future cash flows. These estimates of future taxable income are based on forecast cash flows from operations (which are impacted by production and sales volumes, commodity prices, reserves, operating costs, closure and rehabilitation costs, capital expenditure, dividends and other capital management transactions). To the extent that future cash flows and taxable income differ significantly from estimates, the ability of the group to realise the net deferred tax assets recorded at the reporting date could be impacted.

Judgement is required to determine the provision for income taxes. There are many transactions and calculations for which the ultimate tax determination is uncertain during the ordinary course of business. The various statutory entities within the group recognises liabilities for anticipated tax uncertainties based on the best estimate of whether additional taxes will be due.

Where the final tax outcome of any tax matters are different from the amounts that were initially reported, such differences will impact the income and deferred tax provisions in the period in which such determination is made.

In addition, future changes in tax laws in the jurisdictions in which the group operates could limit the ability of the group to obtain tax deductions in future periods.

Refer to note 41 and note 23 detailing the breakdown of both normal and deferred taxes for the current year.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 2.11 Inventories

Work in progress metal inventory is valued at the lower of net realisable value and the average cost of production or purchase less net revenue from sales of other metals in the ratio of the contribution of these metals to gross sales revenue. Production costs are allocated to platinum, palladium, rhodium and gold (joint products) by dividing the mine output into total mine production costs, determined on a 3 month rolling average basis except for concentrates purchased which is recognised in the month in which it is purchased and not on a 3 month rolling average. The quantity of ounces of joint products in work in progress is calculated based on the following factors. The theoretical inventory at that point in time which is calculated by adding the inputs to the previous physical inventory and then deducting the outputs for the inventory period. The inputs and outputs include estimates due to the delay in finalising analytical values. The estimates are subsequently trued up to the final metal accounting quantities when available. The theoretical inventory is then converted to a refined equivalent inventory by applying appropriate recoveries depending on where the material is within the production pipeline. The recoveries are based on actual results as determined by the inventory count and are in line with industry standards.

The nature of the production process inherently limits the ability to precisely measure recoverability levels. As a result, the metallurgical balancing process is constantly monitored and the variables used in the process are refined based on actual results over time.

Net realisable value tests are performed at each reporting date and represent the current sales price of the product, less estimated costs to complete production and bring the product to sale. Where the time value of money is material, these future prices and costs to complete are discounted.

Stockpiles are measured by estimating the number of tonnes added and removed from the stockpile, the number of contained PGM ounces is based on assay data, and the estimated recovery percentage is based on the expected processing method.

Stockpile tonnages are verified by periodic surveys.

Refer to note 18 detailing the breakdown of inventories at year-end.

## 2.12 Exploration and evaluation expenditure

The application of the group's accounting policy for exploration and evaluation expenditure requires judgement to determine whether future economic benefits are likely, from either future exploitation or sale, or whether activities have not reached a stage that permits a reasonable assessment of the existence of reserves.

In addition to applying judgement to determine whether economic benefits are likely to arise from the group's exploration assets or whether activities have not reached a stage that permits a reasonable assessment of the existence of reserves, the group has to apply a number of estimates and assumptions.

If, after expenditure is capitalised, information becomes available suggesting that the recovery of expenditure is unlikely, the relevant capitalised amount is written off in profit or loss in a period when the new information becomes available.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 2.13 Fair value measurement

The group measures financial instruments at fair value at initial recognition, and subsequently as described in the accounting policies. Also, from time to time, the fair values of non-financial assets and liabilities are required to be determined, e.g., when the entity acquires a business, or where an entity measures the recoverable amount of an asset or cash generating unit at fair value less costs of disposal.

Fair value is the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date.

The fair value of an asset or a liability is measured using the assumptions that market participants would use when pricing the asset or liability, assuming that market participants act in their economic best interest.

A fair value measurement of a non-financial asset takes into account a market participant's ability to generate economic benefits by using the asset in its highest and best use or by selling it to another market participant that would use the asset in its highest and best use.

The group uses valuation techniques that are appropriate in the circumstances and for which sufficient data are available to measure fair value, maximising the use of relevant observable information.

## 2.14 Guarantee to Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited

A financial guarantee contract was issued by Northam Platinum Limited to Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited to guarantee the preference shares that were issued by Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited as part of the BEE transaction.

The redemption of the BEE preference shares is planned to occur through cash accumulation from dividends received from Northam Platinum Limited, and after the lock-in the possible sell-off of Northam Platinum Limited shares into the market to realise the capital value, to redeem the preference shares. In the event that this is not sufficient to settle the liability, it will be secured by the company in terms of a financial guarantee (Northam guarantee), in terms of which Northam Platinum Limited will be responsible for the payment of all amounts which Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited has contracted but failed to pay. Northam may settle the debt by ways of a cash payment or the issue of a determinable number of Northam Platinum Limited shares or a cash and Northam Platinum Limited share combination.

In the Northam Platinum Limited separate financial statements, the financial guarantee was recognised as a financial guarantee liability at inception. Measuring the guarantee contract liability required the use of estimates, at the grant date, which included a dividend yield rate of 0.30%, a 30.0% volatility and a risk free rate of 8.42%. These assumptions have not been updated or changed.

The financial guarantee liability is amortised based on the total value of preference shares still outstanding, as this better reflects the pattern of how Northam Platinum Limited provides the guarantee, and is therefore unchanged from the prior year.

Even though the company currently holds a number of the Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares, these preference shares are still outstanding and therefore no change will be accounted for relating to the guarantee liability as at 30 June 2017, in the separate financial statements.

Refer to note 26 included in the annual financial statements.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 2.15 Pandora joint venture

Northam Platinum Limited has agreed to sell its 7.5% participation interest in the Pandora joint venture to Lonmin Plc.

In terms of the Agreement Northam, through its subsidiary Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited (Mvelaphanda), will dispose of its 7.5% interest in the Pandora joint venture (Pandora JV) to Eastern Platinum Limited, for a cash consideration of R45.6 million. In the event that Northam has to contribute any cash calls to the Pandora JV during the period 1 January 2017 to completion of the Transaction, the value of the cash calls will be reimbursed to Northam, capped at a maximum value of R50.0 million.

The purchase consideration and the reimbursement of any cash calls will be settled on fulfilment of the Transaction.

The Pandora JV is managed by Lonmin and is currently held 50% by Lonmin, through Eastern Platinum Limited, 42.5% by Anglo American Platinum Limited, through Rustenburg Platinum Limited and 7.5% by Northam, through Mvelaphanda. Northam does not consider its minority interest in the Pandora JV as being core to its business.

The transaction is subject to, *inter alia*, all necessary regulatory approvals being obtained, including consent from the Minister of Mineral Resources in terms of section 11 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, No. 28 of 2002, and approval from Lonmin's lending banks.

The group's interest in the Pandora JV was previously classified as an investment in an associate due to the existence of significant influence as opposed to joint control. The entity is called the Pandora JV because there are three parties that have an interest in the entity and the two main parties hold 92.50% interest. Joint control only exists for the two majority parties and the minority interest holder only have significant influence due to board representation. Thus the investment has been accounted for as an investment in associate.

IFRS 5 Non-current assets held for sale and discontinued operations requires a non-current asset to be classified as held for sale if its carrying amount will be recovered principally through a sales transaction rather than through continued use. To qualify for classification as held for sale, a non-current asset must be available for immediate sale in its present condition subject only to terms that are usual and customary for sales of such assets. This is taken to mean that an entity currently has the intention and ability to transfer the asset to a buyer in its present condition.

IFRS 5 contains an exception to the one-year rule. It states that events or circumstances may extend the period to complete the sale beyond one year. Such an extension would not preclude an asset from being classified as held for sale if the delay is caused by events or circumstances beyond the entity's control and therefore is sufficient evidence that the entity remains committed to its plan to sell the asset.

IAS 28 requires that an entity applies IFRS 5 Non-current Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operations to an investment, or a portion of an investment, in an associate that meets the criteria to be classified as held for sale. However, the investor discontinues the use of the equity method from the date that the investment is classified as held for sale. Instead, the associate is then measured at the lower of its carrying amount and fair value less cost to sell. The investment in the Pandora joint venture was classified as a non-current asset held for sale from 1 July 2016, and subsequent signing of the sales agreement.

In terms of the agreement cash calls will have to be contributed by Northam but will however be refunded on the effective date to the maximum value of R50.0 million. All cash calls will therefore be recognised as part of the non-current asset held for sale.

Management has also assessed the recoverability of the balance disclosed as non-current assets held for sale, and believe that the amount is recoverable.

Refer to note 6, which discloses the investment in the Pandora joint venture.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 2.16 Operating segments

Two reportable segments have been identified, being the Zondereinde mine and Booyssendal mine. Both of these mines engage in business activities from where they earn revenue and incur expenses, the operating results of these two segments are also regularly reviewed by the chief operating decision maker at Northam Platinum Limited, which is the executive committee, and their performance assessed separately. Furthermore, discrete financial information is available for both segments.

The Zondereinde mine includes the results of the chrome operations, previously housed in Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited. Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited was transferred to Northam Platinum Limited through a Section 47 of the Income Tax Act transfer during the current year.

No segments were aggregated.

Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited has been included in the annual financial statements, in order to reconcile the amounts to the reported statement of financial position and statement of profit or loss and comprehensive income. Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited is not a separate operating segment as it does not engage in business activities from which it earns revenue and incurs expenses and in addition to this their operating results are not regularly reviewed by the chief operating decision maker in assessing the performance of the company.

Refer to note 3 for the segmental disclosure.

## 2.17 Equity settled share based payment

Northam Platinum Limited will effectively be paying for BEE credentials by distributing Northam Platinum Limited ordinary shares to the various participant Special Purpose Vehicles. This constitutes a share based payment as defined which is classified as an equity-settled share-based payment to be delivered after the 10-year lock-in period. There are no vesting conditions attached to the BEE equity that are held by the BEE participants. The valuation of the share-based expense therefore takes into account the restrictions on the participants' ability to dispose of the shares as well as the fact that they will only receive 10% of actual dividends declared during the 10-year lock-in period. The fair value at grant date is therefore not the same as the listed share price. IFRS 2 requires equity-settled transactions to be accounted for at the fair value at grant date, defined as the date at which the entity and other party agree to a share-based payment arrangement, being the date when the entity and the counterparty have a shared understanding of the terms and conditions of the arrangement. This results in the full share-based payment in respect of the BEE transaction being incurred on day one of the BEE transaction in the prior year.

Refer to note 22 for the equity settled share based payment accounted for in the prior year as part of the BEE transaction.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 2.18 Investment in the Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares

During the current year, Northam Platinum Limited started to acquire Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares in the open market. Under IAS 39 Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement the accounting treatment of a particular financial instrument will depend on some or all of the following factors: the purpose for which it is held, its contractual characteristics, whether the instrument is listed on an exchange, the industry in which the reporting entity operates and an accounting policy or similar choice of the reporting entity.

The investment in the Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares are considered as available for sale financial assets. These shares have been acquired by Northam Platinum Limited not to speculate with and therefore not to make a profit or loss in the short term but rather to keep for the longer term. Potentially these shares will be sold back into the market should cash be required in the longer term. Otherwise, these preference shares will be held to maturity. However, when looking at the considerations for classifying and investment as held to maturity one considers the following: intention to hold the investments for only an undefined period; the holder stands ready to sell the financial asset in response to changes in market interest rates or risks, liquidity needs, changes in the availability of and the yield on alternative investments, changes in financial sources and terms or changes in any other risk factors; and or the right to settle the financial asset at an amount significantly below its amortised cost.

Therefore, due to the uncertainty regarding the intention and ability to hold the preference shares to maturity one cannot classify the investment in the Zambezi preference shares as held to maturity in the accounts of Northam Platinum Limited.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 3. Segmental analysis

The group has two business segments, the Zondereinde mine and the Booyssendal mine. The group's executive committee looks at the performance of the Zondereinde and Booyssendal mines when allocating resources and assessing the segmental performance.

Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited has been included in the table below in order to reconcile the amounts to the reported statement of financial position and statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income. Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited is not a separate operating segment as it does not engage in business activities from which it earns revenue and/or incurs expenses. In addition to this its operating results are not regularly reviewed by the chief operating decision makers in assessing the performance of the entity.

Other relates to various subsidiaries, consolidation adjustments made as well as the capitalisation of borrowing costs.

### Segmental statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income 30 June 2017

|                                                          | Zondereinde<br>operating<br>segment | Booyssendal<br>operating<br>segment | Intercompany<br>eliminations | Zambezi<br>Platinum<br>and the BEE<br>transaction | Other         | Total            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------|
|                                                          | R000                                | R000                                | R000                         | R000                                              | R000          | R000             |
| Sales revenue                                            | 6 395 036                           | 2 574 442                           | (2 104 293)                  | –                                                 | –             | 6 865 185        |
| Cost of sales                                            | (6 162 574)                         | (2 137 031)                         | 2 048 405                    | –                                                 | –             | (6 251 200)      |
| Operating costs                                          | (3 717 601)                         | (1 964 416)                         | 6 000                        | –                                                 | –             | (5 676 017)      |
| On mine operations                                       | (2 909 091)                         | (1 482 640)                         | 6 000                        | –                                                 | –             | (4 385 731)      |
| Concentrator operations                                  | (290 863)                           | (339 910)                           | –                            | –                                                 | –             | (630 773)        |
| Smelting and base metal removal plant costs              | (318 807)                           | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –             | (318 807)        |
| Chrome processing                                        | (20 468)                            | (16 415)                            | –                            | –                                                 | –             | (36 883)         |
| Selling and administration                               | (82 082)                            | (80 305)                            | –                            | –                                                 | –             | (162 387)        |
| Royalty charges                                          | (32 169)                            | (12 872)                            | –                            | –                                                 | –             | (45 041)         |
| Share based payment expenses and profit share scheme     | (64 121)                            | (32 274)                            | –                            | –                                                 | –             | (96 395)         |
| Concentrates purchased                                   | (2 508 386)                         | –                                   | 2 104 293                    | –                                                 | –             | (404 093)        |
| Refining and other costs                                 | (120 633)                           | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –             | (120 633)        |
| Depreciation and write-offs                              | (182 650)                           | (271 666)                           | 1 732                        | –                                                 | –             | (452 584)        |
| Change in metal inventories                              | 366 696                             | 99 051                              | (63 620)                     | –                                                 | –             | 402 127          |
| Operating profit                                         | 232 462                             | 437 411                             | (55 888)                     | –                                                 | –             | 613 985          |
| Share of earnings from associate and joint venture       | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | 4 870         | 4 870            |
| Investment revenue                                       | 126 043                             | 48 196                              | (2 689)                      | (19 204)                                          | 14 960        | 167 306          |
| Finance costs excluding preference share dividends       | (72 512)                            | (21 542)                            | 2 689                        | –                                                 | 20 180        | (71 185)         |
| Net foreign exchange transaction (losses)/gains          | (32 564)                            | (14 165)                            | –                            | –                                                 | –             | (46 729)         |
| Sundry income                                            | 64 233                              | 6 815                               | (7 000)                      | –                                                 | 9 313         | 73 361           |
| Sundry expenditure                                       | (60 587)                            | (32 402)                            | 1 000                        | –                                                 | (38 854)      | (130 843)        |
| Profit/(loss) before preference share dividends          | 257 075                             | 424 313                             | (61 888)                     | (19 204)                                          | 10 469        | 610 765          |
| Amortisation of liquidity fees paid on preference shares | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | (16 390)                                          | –             | (16 390)         |
| Preference share dividends net of amounts capitalised    | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | (1 017 396)                                       | –             | (1 017 396)      |
| Loss on derecognition of preference share liability      | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | (901)                                             | –             | (901)            |
| Profit/(loss) before tax                                 | 257 075                             | 424 313                             | (61 888)                     | (1 053 891)                                       | 10 469        | (423 922)        |
| Taxation                                                 | (73 065)                            | (146 986)                           | –                            | –                                                 | 8 030         | (212 021)        |
| <b>Profit/(loss) for the year</b>                        | <b>184 010</b>                      | <b>277 327</b>                      | <b>(61 888)</b>              | <b>(1 053 891)</b>                                | <b>18 499</b> | <b>(635 943)</b> |



# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Segmental statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income 30 June 2016

|                                                          | Zondereinde<br>operating<br>segment | Booyseendal<br>operating<br>segment | Intercompany<br>eliminations | Zambezi<br>Platinum<br>and the BEE<br>transaction | Other           | Total            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
|                                                          | R000                                | R000                                | R000                         | R000                                              | R000            | R000             |
| Sales revenue                                            | 5 966 217                           | 1 972 883                           | (1 843 980)                  | –                                                 | 1 950           | 6 097 070        |
| Cost of sales                                            | (5 718 092)                         | (1 796 904)                         | 1 843 980                    | –                                                 | (42 706)        | (5 713 722)      |
| Operating costs                                          | (3 464 378)                         | (1 541 040)                         | –                            | –                                                 | (1 815)         | (5 007 233)      |
| On mine operations                                       | (2 691 280)                         | (1 166 353)                         | –                            | –                                                 | –               | (3 857 633)      |
| Concentrator operations                                  | (285 170)                           | (283 461)                           | –                            | –                                                 | –               | (568 631)        |
| Smelting and base metal removal plant costs              | (273 612)                           | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –               | (273 612)        |
| Chrome processing                                        | (18 175)                            | (11 921)                            | –                            | –                                                 | –               | (30 096)         |
| Selling and administration                               | (106 622)                           | (47 762)                            | –                            | –                                                 | –               | (154 384)        |
| Royalty charges                                          | (34 419)                            | (9 864)                             | –                            | –                                                 | –               | (44 283)         |
| Share based payment expenses and profit share scheme     | (46 532)                            | (28 547)                            | –                            | –                                                 | –               | (75 079)         |
| Rehabilitation                                           | (8 568)                             | 6 868                               | –                            | –                                                 | –               | (1 700)          |
| Other                                                    | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | (1 815)         | (1 815)          |
| Concentrates purchased                                   | (2 194 494)                         | –                                   | 1 843 980                    | –                                                 | –               | (350 514)        |
| Refining and other costs                                 | (133 186)                           | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –               | (133 186)        |
| Depreciation and write-offs                              | (191 797)                           | (213 481)                           | –                            | –                                                 | 1 733           | (403 545)        |
| Change in metal inventories                              | 265 763                             | (42 383)                            | –                            | –                                                 | (42 624)        | 180 756          |
| <b>Operating profit</b>                                  | <b>248 125</b>                      | <b>175 979</b>                      | <b>–</b>                     | <b>–</b>                                          | <b>(40 756)</b> | <b>383 348</b>   |
| Share of losses from associate and joint venture         | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | (32 253)        | (32 253)         |
| Investment revenue                                       | 111 066                             | 163 940                             | (27 223)                     | –                                                 | 17 475          | 265 258          |
| Finance costs excluding preference share dividends       | (33 515)                            | (24 131)                            | 27 223                       | –                                                 | (9 211)         | (39 634)         |
| Net foreign exchange transaction (losses)/gains          | 26 163                              | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –               | 26 163           |
| Sundry income                                            | 131 274                             | 3 233                               | –                            | –                                                 | 20 258          | 154 765          |
| Sundry expenditure                                       | (37 088)                            | (32 110)                            | –                            | –                                                 | (22 924)        | (92 122)         |
| Profit/(loss) before preference share dividends          | 446 025                             | 286 911                             | –                            | –                                                 | (67 411)        | 665 525          |
| Amortisation of liquidity fees paid on preference shares | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | (18 088)                                          | –               | (18 088)         |
| Preference share dividends                               | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | (918 806)                                         | –               | (918 806)        |
| (Loss)/profit before tax                                 | 446 025                             | 286 911                             | –                            | (936 894)                                         | (67 411)        | (271 369)        |
| Taxation                                                 | (162 587)                           | (82 866)                            | –                            | –                                                 | 8 559           | (236 894)        |
| <b>(Loss)/profit for the year</b>                        | <b>283 438</b>                      | <b>204 045</b>                      | <b>–</b>                     | <b>(936 894)</b>                                  | <b>(58 852)</b> | <b>(508 263)</b> |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

Segmental statement of financial position as at 30 June 2017

| 8                                                           | Zondereinde<br>operating<br>segment | Booyseindal<br>operating<br>segment | Intercompany<br>eliminations | Zambezi<br>Platinum and<br>the BEE<br>transaction | Other       | Total       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
|                                                             | R000                                | R000                                | R000                         | R000                                              | R000        | R000        |
| <b>Assets</b>                                               |                                     |                                     |                              |                                                   |             |             |
| <b>Non-current assets</b>                                   | 14 019 436                          | 12 563 189                          | (17 869 263)                 | 6 468 175                                         | 302 016     | 15 483 553  |
| Property, plant and equipment                               | 3 323 250                           | 5 672 774                           | –                            | –                                                 | 26 236      | 9 022 260   |
| Mining properties and mineral resources                     | 116 560                             | 6 474 365                           | (954 583)                    | –                                                 | –           | 5 636 342   |
| Interest in associates and joint ventures                   | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | 167 214     | 167 214     |
| Investment in subsidiaries                                  | 10 216 000                          | –                                   | (10 216 000)                 | –                                                 | –           | –           |
| Investments in Northam Platinum Limited                     | –                                   | –                                   | (6 468 175)                  | 6 468 175                                         | –           | –           |
| Other investments                                           | 230 505                             | –                                   | (230 505)                    | –                                                 | –           | –           |
| Land and township development                               | 22 749                              | 12 085                              | –                            | –                                                 | 13 695      | 48 529      |
| Long term receivables                                       | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | 83 745      | 83 745      |
| Investments held by Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund | 48 274                              | 53 959                              | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 102 233     |
| Environmental Guarantee Investment                          | 54 507                              | 13 597                              | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 68 104      |
| Buttonshepe Conservancy Trust                               | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | 11 126      | 11 126      |
| Long term prepayments                                       | –                                   | 336 409                             | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 336 409     |
| Other assets                                                | 7 591                               | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 7 591       |
| <b>Current assets</b>                                       | 5 433 769                           | 969 737                             | (2 442 183)                  | 445                                               | 141 569     | 4 103 337   |
| Short term subsidiary loan                                  | 1 838 213                           | 476 691                             | (2 314 904)                  | –                                                 | –           | –           |
| Inventories                                                 | 1 673 000                           | 162 345                             | (106 243)                    | –                                                 | –           | 1 729 102   |
| Trade and other receivables                                 | 487 956                             | 70 140                              | (21 036)                     | 7                                                 | 11 930      | 548 997     |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                   | 1 396 677                           | 260 561                             | –                            | 438                                               | 129 189     | 1 786 865   |
| Tax receivable                                              | 37 923                              | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | 450         | 38 373      |
| <b>Non-current assets held for sale</b>                     | 49 222                              | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 49 222      |
| <b>Total assets</b>                                         | 19 502 427                          | 13 532 926                          | (20 311 446)                 | 6 468 620                                         | 443 585     | 19 636 112  |
| <b>Equities and liabilities</b>                             |                                     |                                     |                              |                                                   |             |             |
| <b>Total equity</b>                                         | 9 036 935                           | 9 477 739                           | (8 386 346)                  | (2 167 943)                                       | 131 656     | 8 092 041   |
| Stated capital                                              | 13 778 114                          | 6 955 843                           | (14 061 967)                 | –                                                 | 7 106 124   | 13 778 114  |
| Treasury shares                                             | –                                   | –                                   | (6 556 123)                  | –                                                 | –           | (6 556 123) |
| (Accumulated loss)/retained earnings                        | (5 916 974)                         | 20 141                              | 15 034 846                   | (2 167 943)                                       | (6 974 468) | (4 398)     |
| Non distributable reserves                                  | –                                   | 2 501 755                           | (2 501 755)                  | –                                                 | –           | –           |
| Other comprehensive income                                  | 2 039                               | –                                   | (2 039)                      | –                                                 | –           | –           |
| Equity settled share based payment reserve                  | 1 173 756                           | –                                   | (299 308)                    | –                                                 | –           | 874 448     |
| <b>Non-current liabilities</b>                              | 9 005 235                           | 1 871 467                           | (9 589 159)                  | 8 636 557                                         | 5 585       | 9 929 685   |
| Deferred tax liability                                      | 605 265                             | 1 671 516                           | (1 696 483)                  | –                                                 | 5 585       | 585 883     |
| Long term provisions                                        | 141 284                             | 163 545                             | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 304 829     |
| Long term loans                                             | 249 428                             | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 249 428     |
| Long term share based payment liability                     | 52 233                              | 36 406                              | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 88 639      |
| Financial guarantee liability                               | 7 535 944                           | –                                   | (7 535 944)                  | –                                                 | –           | –           |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                             | 421 081                             | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 421 081     |
| Preference share liability                                  | –                                   | –                                   | (356 732)                    | 8 636 557                                         | –           | 8 279 825   |
| <b>Current liabilities</b>                                  | 1 460 257                           | 2 183 720                           | (2 335 941)                  | 6                                                 | 306 344     | 1 614 386   |
| Current portion of long term loans                          | 13 434                              | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 13 434      |
| Short term share based payment liability                    | 45 988                              | 29 038                              | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 75 026      |
| Tax payable                                                 | –                                   | 438                                 | –                            | 6                                                 | 102 106     | 102 550     |
| Subsidiary loans                                            | 476 547                             | 1 720 088                           | (2 335 941)                  | –                                                 | 139 306     | –           |
| Trade and other payables                                    | 778 316                             | 424 924                             | –                            | –                                                 | 64 932      | 1 268 172   |
| Short term provisions                                       | 145 972                             | 9 232                               | –                            | –                                                 | –           | 155 204     |
| <b>Total equity and liabilities</b>                         | 19 502 427                          | 13 532 926                          | (20 311 446)                 | 6 468 620                                         | 443 585     | 19 636 112  |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

Segmental statement of financial position as at 30 June 2016

|                                                             | Zondereinde<br>operating<br>segment | Booyseindal<br>operating<br>segment | Intercompany<br>eliminations | Zambezi<br>Platinum and<br>the BEE<br>transaction | Other     | Total       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------|-------------|
|                                                             | R000                                | R000                                | R000                         | R000                                              | R000      | R000        |
| <b>Assets</b>                                               |                                     |                                     |                              |                                                   |           |             |
| <b>Non-current assets</b>                                   | 13 298 934                          | 11 614 864                          | (22 573 282)                 | 6 875 935                                         | 4 893 633 | 14 110 084  |
| Property, plant and equipment                               | 2 813 957                           | 5 089 844                           | (51 096)                     | –                                                 | 1 288     | 7 853 993   |
| Mining properties and mineral resources                     | 101 518                             | 6 451 464                           | (954 583)                    | –                                                 | 15 695    | 5 614 094   |
| Interest in associates and joint ventures                   | 36 844                              | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | 155 320   | 192 164     |
| Investment in subsidiaries                                  | 10 236 000                          | –                                   | (14 836 000)                 | –                                                 | 4 600 000 | –           |
| Investment in Northam Platinum Limited                      | –                                   | –                                   | (6 875 935)                  | 6 875 935                                         | –         | –           |
| Unlisted investment                                         | 6                                   | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –         | 6           |
| Land and township development                               | 18 218                              | 11 955                              | –                            | –                                                 | 21 168    | 51 341      |
| Long term receivables                                       | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | 89 717    | 89 717      |
| Investments held by Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund | 43 204                              | 50 443                              | –                            | –                                                 | –         | 93 647      |
| Environmental Guarantee Investment                          | 49 187                              | 11 158                              | –                            | –                                                 | –         | 60 345      |
| Buttonshepe Conservancy Trust                               | –                                   | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | 10 445    | 10 445      |
| Deferred tax asset                                          | –                                   | –                                   | 144 332                      | –                                                 | –         | 144 332     |
| <b>Current assets</b>                                       | 5 665 592                           | 1 856 514                           | (5 117 587)                  | 424                                               | 2 462 836 | 4 867 779   |
| Short term subsidiary loan                                  | 2 354 985                           | 363 618                             | (5 074 446)                  | –                                                 | 2 355 843 | –           |
| Inventories                                                 | 1 309 127                           | 63 767                              | (42 624)                     | –                                                 | –         | 1 330 270   |
| Trade and other receivables                                 | 295 867                             | 68 587                              | (517)                        | –                                                 | 11 267    | 375 204     |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                   | 1 657 140                           | 1 360 542                           | –                            | 424                                               | 86 974    | 3 105 080   |
| Tax receivable                                              | 48 473                              | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | 8 752     | 57 225      |
| <b>Total assets</b>                                         | 18 964 526                          | 13 471 378                          | (27 690 869)                 | 6 876 359                                         | 7 356 469 | 18 977 863  |
| <b>Equities and liabilities</b>                             |                                     |                                     |                              |                                                   |           |             |
| <b>Total equity</b>                                         | 8 920 888                           | 6 844 567                           | (13 319 619)                 | (770 976)                                         | 7 053 124 | 8 727 984   |
| Stated capital                                              | 13 778 114                          | 4 600 000                           | (11 706 125)                 | –                                                 | 7 106 125 | 13 778 114  |
| Treasury shares                                             | –                                   | –                                   | (6 556 123)                  | –                                                 | –         | (6 556 123) |
| Retained earnings                                           | (6 030 982)                         | (257 188)                           | 7 743 692                    | (770 976)                                         | (53 001)  | 631 545     |
| Equity settled share based payment reserve                  | –                                   | 2 501 755                           | (2 501 755)                  | –                                                 | –         | –           |
| Share of other comprehensive income from associate          | 1 173 756                           | –                                   | (299 308)                    | –                                                 | –         | 874 448     |
| <b>Non-current liabilities</b>                              | 8 983 689                           | 1 695 422                           | (9 320 307)                  | 7 647 335                                         | 66 040    | 9 072 179   |
| Deferred tax liability                                      | 597 149                             | 1 530 187                           | (1 613 759)                  | 71 638                                            | 5 422     | 590 637     |
| Long term provisions                                        | 139 316                             | 133 504                             | –                            | –                                                 | –         | 272 820     |
| Long term loans                                             | 239 351                             | –                                   | (24 456)                     | –                                                 | 60 618    | 275 513     |
| Long term share based payment liability                     | 52 642                              | 31 731                              | –                            | –                                                 | –         | 84 373      |
| Financial guarantee liability                               | 7 535 944                           | –                                   | (7 535 944)                  | –                                                 | –         | –           |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                             | 419 287                             | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | –         | 419 287     |
| Preference share liability                                  | –                                   | –                                   | (146 148)                    | 7 575 697                                         | –         | 7 429 549   |
| <b>Current liabilities</b>                                  | 1 059 949                           | 4 931 389                           | (5 050 943)                  | –                                                 | 237 305   | 1 177 700   |
| Current portion of long term loans                          | 9 400                               | –                                   | –                            | –                                                 | 3 801     | 13 201      |
| Short term share based payment liability                    | 44 197                              | 12 507                              | –                            | –                                                 | –         | 56 704      |
| Tax payable                                                 | –                                   | 1 418                               | –                            | –                                                 | 102 654   | 104 072     |
| Subsidiary loans                                            | 363 618                             | 4 618 007                           | (5 049 990)                  | –                                                 | 68 365    | –           |
| Trade and other payables                                    | 524 934                             | 291 469                             | (953)                        | –                                                 | 62 485    | 877 935     |
| Short term provisions                                       | 117 800                             | 7 988                               | –                            | –                                                 | –         | 125 788     |
| <b>Total equity and liabilities</b>                         | 18 964 526                          | 13 471 378                          | (27 690 869)                 | 6 876 359                                         | 7 356 469 | 18 977 863  |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 4. Property, plant and equipment

Property, plant and equipment balances for the group are made up as follows:

|                                                       | Shafts,<br>mining<br>development<br>and<br>infrastructure | Metallurgical<br>and refining<br>plants | Land and<br>buildings | Other assets | Decommissio-<br>ning asset | Assets under<br>construction | Total      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|------------|
| Group                                                 | R000                                                      | R000                                    | R000                  | R000         | R000                       | R000                         | R000       |
| Cost opening balance as at 1 July 2015                | 5 888 409                                                 | 2 431 091                               | 443 534               | 249 434      | 132 512                    | 67 598                       | 9 212 578  |
| Transfer from mining properties and mineral resources | –                                                         | 52 641                                  | –                     | –            | –                          | –                            | 52 641     |
| Additions                                             | 284 564                                                   | 15 529                                  | 1 288                 | 636          | –                          | 780 824                      | 1 082 841  |
| Transfer from assets under construction               | 239 675                                                   | 40 412                                  | 7 960                 | 1 742        | –                          | (289 789)                    | –          |
| Disposals and write offs                              | –                                                         | (215)                                   | (7 271)               | (850)        | –                          | –                            | (8 336)    |
| Present value of decommissioning asset capitalised    | –                                                         | –                                       | –                     | –            | 35 984                     | –                            | 35 984     |
| Closing cost as at 30 June 2016                       | 6 412 648                                                 | 2 539 458                               | 445 511               | 250 962      | 168 496                    | 558 633                      | 10 375 708 |
| Transfer to mining properties and mineral resources   | (19 038)                                                  | –                                       | –                     | –            | –                          | –                            | (19 038)   |
| Additions                                             | 11 837                                                    | 1 901                                   | 398                   | 251          | –                          | 1 528 255                    | 1 542 642  |
| Transfer from assets under construction               | 654 158                                                   | 49 813                                  | 72 331                | 39 047       | –                          | (815 349)                    | –          |
| Disposals and write offs                              | (6 572)                                                   | –                                       | (337)                 | (3 315)      | –                          | –                            | (10 224)   |
| Present value of decommissioning asset capitalised    | –                                                         | –                                       | –                     | –            | 4 530                      | –                            | 4 530      |
| Borrowing costs capitalised                           | –                                                         | –                                       | –                     | –            | –                          | 76 058                       | 76 058     |
| Closing cost as at 30 June 2017                       | 7 053 033                                                 | 2 591 172                               | 517 903               | 286 945      | 173 026                    | 1 347 597                    | 11 969 676 |

|                                                            | Shafts,<br>mining<br>development<br>and<br>infrastructure | Metallurgical<br>and refining<br>plants | Land and<br>buildings | Other assets | Decommissio-<br>ning asset | Assets under<br>construction | Total       |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------|
| Group                                                      | R000                                                      | R000                                    | R000                  | R000         | R000                       | R000                         | R000        |
| Accumulated depreciation opening balance as at 1 July 2015 | (1 432 770)                                               | (453 257)                               | (146 813)             | (89 591)     | (24 795)                   | –                            | (2 147 226) |
| Transfer from mining properties and mineral resources      | –                                                         | –                                       | (2 853)               | –            | –                          | –                            | (2 853)     |
| Depreciation                                               | (220 649)                                                 | (107 665)                               | (7 093)               | (36 379)     | (4 008)                    | –                            | (375 794)   |
| Disposals and write offs                                   | –                                                         | –                                       | 3 751                 | 407          | –                          | –                            | 4 158       |
| Accumulated depreciation balance as at 30 June 2016        | (1 653 419)                                               | (560 922)                               | (153 008)             | (125 563)    | (28 803)                   | –                            | (2 521 715) |
| Transfer to mining properties and mineral resources        | (7 420)                                                   | –                                       | –                     | –            | –                          | –                            | (7 420)     |
| Depreciation                                               | (281 742)                                                 | (92 249)                                | (9 794)               | (38 788)     | (3 962)                    | –                            | (426 535)   |
| Disposals and write offs                                   | 4 893                                                     | –                                       | 236                   | 3 125        | –                          | –                            | 8 254       |
| Accumulated depreciation balance as at 30 June 2017        | (1 937 688)                                               | (653 171)                               | (162 566)             | (161 226)    | (32 765)                   | –                            | (2 947 416) |
| Net book value as at 30 June 2016                          | 4 759 229                                                 | 1 978 536                               | 292 503               | 125 399      | 139 693                    | 558 633                      | 7 853 993   |
| Net book value as at 30 June 2017                          | 5 115 345                                                 | 1 938 001                               | 355 337               | 125 719      | 140 261                    | 1 347 597                    | 9 022 260   |

During the current year, the group changed the presentation of this note, to give more useful information to the reader. In the prior year only four classes of assets were disclosed, but in the current year six classes are disclosed which we believe better represent the nature of the different classes of assets, including assets under construction.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

Property, plant and equipment balances for the company are made up as follows:

|                                                                            | Shafts,<br>mining<br>development<br>and<br>infrastructure | Metallurgical<br>and refining<br>plants | Land and<br>buildings | Other assets | Decommissio-<br>ning asset | Assets under<br>construction | Total     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| Company                                                                    | R000                                                      | R000                                    | R000                  | R000         | R000                       | R000                         | R000      |
| Cost opening balance as at 1 July 2015                                     | 2 828 152                                                 | 692 370                                 | 422 839               | 155 570      | 67 485                     | 63 475                       | 4 229 891 |
| Transfers from mining properties and mineral resources                     | 7 423                                                     | –                                       | –                     | –            | –                          | –                            | 7 423     |
| Additions                                                                  | –                                                         | –                                       | –                     | –            | –                          | 551 091                      | 551 091   |
| Transfer from assets under construction                                    | 76 870                                                    | 40 412                                  | 7 960                 | 1 742        | –                          | (126 984)                    | –         |
| Disposals and write offs                                                   | –                                                         | (26 968)                                | (7 271)               | (849)        | –                          | –                            | (35 088)  |
| Present value of decommissioning asset capitalised                         | –                                                         | –                                       | –                     | –            | 3 024                      | –                            | 3 024     |
| Cost closing cost as at 30 June 2016                                       | 2 912 445                                                 | 705 814                                 | 423 528               | 156 463      | 70 509                     | 487 582                      | 4 756 341 |
| Transfers from mining properties and mineral resources                     | 10 119                                                    | –                                       | –                     | –            | –                          | –                            | 10 119    |
| Additions                                                                  | –                                                         | 1 802                                   | –                     | 250          | –                          | 764 685                      | 766 737   |
| Assets acquired as part of the pooling of interest                         | –                                                         | 42 433                                  | –                     | –            | –                          | –                            | 42 433    |
| Land and buildings transferred to Booyssendal Platinum Proprietary Limited | –                                                         | –                                       | (97 625)              | –            | –                          | –                            | (97 625)  |
| Transfer from assets under construction                                    | 196 279                                                   | 47 263                                  | 70 895                | 30 347       | –                          | (344 784)                    | –         |
| Disposals and write offs                                                   | (3 408)                                                   | –                                       | (337)                 | (980)        | –                          | –                            | (4 725)   |
| Present value of decommissioning asset capitalised                         | –                                                         | –                                       | –                     | –            | (5 821)                    | –                            | (5 821)   |
| Interest capitalised                                                       | –                                                         | –                                       | –                     | –            | –                          | 23 625                       | 23 625    |
| Cost closing cost as at 30 June 2017                                       | 3 115 435                                                 | 797 312                                 | 396 461               | 186 080      | 64 688                     | 931 108                      | 5 491 084 |

|                                                            | Shafts,<br>mining<br>development<br>and<br>infrastructure | Metallurgical<br>and refining<br>plants | Land and<br>buildings | Other assets | Decommissio-<br>ning asset | Assets under<br>construction | Total       |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------|
| Company                                                    | R000                                                      | R000                                    | R000                  | R000         | R000                       | R000                         | R000        |
| Accumulated depreciation opening balance as at 1 July 2015 | (1 213 301)                                               | (354 302)                               | (146 607)             | (75 166)     | (21 502)                   | –                            | (1 810 878) |
| Transfers from mining properties and mineral resources     | –                                                         | (2 852)                                 | –                     | –            | –                          | –                            | (2 852)     |
| Depreciation                                               | (97 242)                                                  | (47 745)                                | (11 079)              | (27 191)     | (1 436)                    | –                            | (184 693)   |
| Disposals and write offs                                   | –                                                         | 26 967                                  | 4 987                 | 406          | –                          | –                            | 32 360      |
| Accumulated depreciation balance as at 30 June 2016        | (1 310 543)                                               | (377 932)                               | (152 699)             | (101 951)    | (22 938)                   | –                            | (1 966 063) |
| Transfers from mining properties and mineral resources     | (7 110)                                                   | –                                       | –                     | –            | –                          | –                            | (7 110)     |
| Assets acquired as part of the pooling of interest         | –                                                         | (18 554)                                | –                     | –            | –                          | –                            | (18 554)    |
| Depreciation                                               | (105 463)                                                 | (36 242)                                | (7 624)               | (27 648)     | (1 883)                    | –                            | (178 860)   |
| Disposals and write offs                                   | 1 729                                                     | –                                       | 236                   | 790          | –                          | –                            | 2 755       |
| Accumulated depreciation balance as at 30 June 2017        | (1 421 387)                                               | (432 728)                               | (160 087)             | (128 809)    | (24 821)                   | –                            | (2 167 832) |
| Net book value as at 30 June 2016                          | 1 601 902                                                 | 327 882                                 | 270 829               | 54 512       | 47 571                     | 487 582                      | 2 790 278   |
| Net book value as at 30 June 2017                          | 1 694 048                                                 | 364 584                                 | 236 374               | 57 271       | 39 867                     | 931 108                      | 3 323 252   |

During the current year, the group changed the presentation of this note, to give more useful information to the reader. In the prior year only four classes of assets were disclosed, but in the current year six classes are disclosed which we believe better represent the nature of the different classes of assets, including assets under construction.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 5. Mining properties and mineral resources

|                                                             | Current<br>production<br>mineral<br>reserves and<br>resources | Project<br>mineral<br>reserves and<br>resources | Total     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Group                                                       | R000                                                          | R000                                            | R000      |
| Cost opening balance as at 1 July 2015                      | 1 019 706                                                     | 4 833 671                                       | 5 853 377 |
| Transfer to property, plant and equipment                   | (52 641)                                                      | –                                               | (52 641)  |
| Additions                                                   | –                                                             | 55 155                                          | 55 155    |
| Cost closing balance as at 30 June 2016                     | 967 065                                                       | 4 888 826                                       | 5 855 891 |
| Transfer from property, plant and equipment                 | 19 038                                                        | –                                               | 19 038    |
| Additions                                                   | 21 839                                                        | –                                               | 21 839    |
| Cost closing balance as at 30 June 2017                     | 1 007 942                                                     | 4 888 826                                       | 5 896 768 |
| Opening accumulated depreciation balance as at 1 July 2015  | (216 899)                                                     | –                                               | (216 899) |
| Transfer to property, plant and equipment                   | 2 853                                                         | –                                               | 2 853     |
| Depreciation                                                | (27 751)                                                      | –                                               | (27 751)  |
| Accumulated depreciation closing balance as at 30 June 2016 | (241 797)                                                     | –                                               | (241 797) |
| Transfer to property, plant and equipment                   | 7 420                                                         | –                                               | 7 420     |
| Depreciation                                                | (26 049)                                                      | –                                               | (26 049)  |
| Accumulated depreciation closing balance as at 30 June 2017 | (260 426)                                                     | –                                               | (260 426) |
| Net book value as at 30 June 2016                           | 725 268                                                       | 4 888 826                                       | 5 614 094 |
| Net book value as at 30 June 2017                           | 747 516                                                       | 4 888 826                                       | 5 636 342 |

During the year the classification of assets from Mining properties and Mineral resources (reported previously) was changed to current production mineral reserves and resources (currently being mined) and project mineral reserves and resources (still subject to development) respectively for more accurate disclosure.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

|                                                             | Current<br>production<br>mineral<br>reserves and<br>resources | Project<br>mineral<br>reserves and<br>resources | Total     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Company                                                     | R000                                                          | R000                                            | R000      |
| Cost opening balance as at 1 July 2015                      | 266 314                                                       | –                                               | 266 314   |
| Transfer to property, plant and equipment                   | (7 423)                                                       | –                                               | (7 423)   |
| Additions                                                   | –                                                             | –                                               | –         |
| Cost closing balance as at 30 June 2016                     | 258 891                                                       | –                                               | 258 891   |
| Transfer to property, plant and equipment                   | (10 119)                                                      | –                                               | (10 119)  |
| Additions                                                   | 21 839                                                        | –                                               | 21 839    |
| Cost closing balance as at 30 June 2017                     | 270 611                                                       | –                                               | 270 611   |
| Opening accumulated depreciation balance as at 1 July 2015  | (156 952)                                                     | –                                               | (156 952) |
| Transfer to property, plant and equipment                   | 2 852                                                         | –                                               | 2 852     |
| Depreciation                                                | (3 273)                                                       | –                                               | (3 273)   |
| Accumulated depreciation closing balance as at 30 June 2016 | (157 373)                                                     | –                                               | (157 373) |
| Transfer to property, plant and equipment                   | 7 110                                                         | –                                               | 7 110     |
| Depreciation                                                | (3 790)                                                       | –                                               | (3 790)   |
| Accumulated depreciation closing balance as at 30 June 2017 | (154 053)                                                     | –                                               | (154 053) |
| Net book value as at 30 June 2016                           | 101 518                                                       | –                                               | 101 518   |
| Net book value as at 30 June 2017                           | 116 558                                                       | –                                               | 116 558   |

During the year the classification of assets from Mining properties and Mineral resources (reported previously) was changed to current production mineral reserves and resources (currently being mined) and project mineral reserves and resources (still subject to development) respectively for more accurate disclosure.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 6. Interest in associates and joint ventures

Interest in associates and joint ventures comprises a 50% interest in the Dwaalkop platinum project (joint venture) and a 30% interest (2016: 20% interest) in SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited (associate). The additional investment in SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited was acquired for R10.7 million, during the year, increasing the investment from 20% to 30%.

As a result of a conclusion of a sales agreement, between the company and Lonmin plc, to sell the 7.5% participation interest in the Pandora joint venture. The investment is no longer equity accounted and disclosed as an associate but classified as a held for sale asset, effective 1 July 2016.

During the previous financial year the 20.3% interest in the issued share capital of Trans Hex Group Limited was sold.

All other percentage holdings remained unchanged from the prior year.

The interest in the Pandora joint venture was accounted for as an associate and the interest in Dwaalkop joint venture is accounted for as joint venture. The investment in SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited is accounted for as an associate. Previously the interest in Trans Hex Group Limited was accounted for as an investment in associate prior to being sold.

|                                  | Group   |         | Company |        |
|----------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|--------|
|                                  | 2017    | 2016    | 2017    | 2016   |
|                                  | R000    | R000    | R000    | R000   |
| Dwaalkop joint venture           | 136 230 | 136 230 | –       | –      |
| Pandora joint venture#           | –       | 45 565  | –       | 36 845 |
| SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited | 30 984  | 10 369  | –       | –      |
|                                  | 167 214 | 192 164 | –       | 36 845 |

#The investment in the Pandora joint venture is disclosed as a non-current asset held for sale from 1 July 2016.

Below is a reconciliation of the group's interest in associates and joint ventures as at 30 June 2017:

|                                          | Interest in Pandora joint venture | Interest in Dwaalkop joint venture | Interest in SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited | Total    |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|----------|
|                                          | R000                              | R000                               | R000                                         | R000     |
| Opening balance as at 1 July 2016        | 45 565                            | 136 230                            | 10 369                                       | 192 164  |
| Additional investment                    | –                                 | –                                  | 10 745                                       | 10 745   |
| Conversion of loan to equity investment  | –                                 | –                                  | 5 000                                        | 5 000    |
| Profit for the year                      | –                                 | –                                  | 4 870                                        | 4 870    |
| Reclassification to held for sale assets | (45 565)                          | –                                  | –                                            | (45 565) |
| Closing balance as at 30 June 2017       | –                                 | 136 230                            | 30 984                                       | 167 214  |

Below is a summary of the amounts classified as non-current assets held for sale:

|                                                         | Group  |      | Company |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------|------|---------|------|
|                                                         | 2017   | 2016 | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                         | R000   | R000 | R000    | R000 |
| Transfer from interest in associates and joint ventures | 45 565 | –    | 36 845  | –    |
| Cash calls                                              | 4 498  | –    | 4 498   | –    |
| IFRS 5 adjustment to fair value less costs to sell      | (841)  | –    | 7 879   | –    |
| Total non-current assets held for sale                  | 49 222 | –    | 49 222  | –    |

Northam Platinum Limited is still responsible for contributing to cash calls from the Pandora joint venture, contributions made from 1 January 2017 to the transaction date however will be refunded by Eastern Platinum Limited, a subsidiary of Lonmin plc. All other cash calls had to be written off during the year under review.



# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

Below is a reconciliation of the group's interest in associates and joint ventures as at 30 June 2016:

|                                               | Interest in Pandora joint venture | Interest in Dwaalkop joint venture | Interest in Trans Hex Group Limited | Interest in SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited | Total    |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|----------|
|                                               | R000                              | R000                               | R000                                | R000                                         | R000     |
| Opening balance as at 1 July 2015             | 70 720                            | 136 230                            | 68 897                              | –                                            | 275 847  |
| Additional investment                         | 10 601                            | –                                  | –                                   | 10 000                                       | 20 601   |
| (Loss)/profit for the year                    | (12 620)                          | –                                  | (20 002)                            | 369                                          | (32 253) |
| Other comprehensive income                    | –                                 | –                                  | (3 947)                             | –                                            | (3 947)  |
| Current year amortisation                     | (2 600)                           | –                                  | –                                   | –                                            | (2 600)  |
| Cash distributions received                   | (24)                              | –                                  | –                                   | –                                            | (24)     |
| Reversal of prior year impairment             | –                                 | –                                  | 34 122                              | –                                            | 34 122   |
| Impairment                                    | (20 512)                          | –                                  | –                                   | –                                            | (20 512) |
| Sale of investment in Trans Hex Group Limited | –                                 | –                                  | (79 070)                            | –                                            | (79 070) |
| Closing balance as at 30 June 2016            | 45 565                            | 136 230                            | –                                   | 10 369                                       | 192 164  |

Below is a reconciliation of the company's interest in associates and joint ventures as at 30 June 2017:

|                                          | Interest in Pandora joint venture | Interest in Dwaalkop joint venture | Interest in SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited | Total    |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|----------|
|                                          | R000                              | R000                               | R000                                         | R000     |
| Opening balance as at 1 July 2016        | 36 845                            | –                                  | –                                            | 36 845   |
| Reclassification to held for sale assets | (36 845)                          | –                                  | –                                            | (36 845) |
| Closing balance as at 30 June 2017       | –                                 | –                                  | –                                            | –        |

Northam Platinum Limited is still responsible for contributing to cash calls from the Pandora joint venture, contributions made from 1 January 2017 to the transaction date however will be refunded by Eastern Platinum Limited, a subsidiary of Lonmin plc. All other cash calls had to be written off during the year under review.

Below is a reconciliation of the company's interest in associates and joint ventures as at 30 June 2016:

|                                               | Interest in Pandora joint venture | Interest in Dwaalkop joint venture | Interest in Trans Hex Group Limited | Interest in SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited | Total    |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|----------|
|                                               | R000                              | R000                               | R000                                | R000                                         | R000     |
| Opening balance as at 1 July 2015             | 49 356                            | –                                  | 67 605                              | –                                            | 116 961  |
| Additional investment                         | 10 601                            | –                                  | –                                   | –                                            | 10 601   |
| Current year amortisation                     | (2 600)                           | –                                  | –                                   | –                                            | (2 600)  |
| Impairment                                    | (20 512)                          | –                                  | –                                   | –                                            | (20 512) |
| Sale of investment in Trans Hex Group Limited | –                                 | –                                  | (67 605)                            | –                                            | (67 605) |
| Closing balance as at 30 June 2016            | 36 845                            | –                                  | –                                   | –                                            | 36 845   |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

Below is a summary of the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income of the various associates and joint ventures, as detailed in their respective accounting records and therefore disclosed at 100%:

## Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income as at 30 June 2017

|                                         | Interest in<br>Pandora<br>joint venture | Interest in<br>Dwaalkop<br>joint venture | Interest in<br>SSG<br>Holdings<br>Proprietary<br>Limited | Total     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
|                                         | R000                                    | R000                                     | R000                                                     | R000      |
| Revenue                                 | –                                       | –                                        | 503 783                                                  | 503 783   |
| Cost of sales                           | –                                       | –                                        | (32 978)                                                 | (32 978)  |
| Gross profit                            | –                                       | –                                        | 470 805                                                  | 470 805   |
| Other income                            | –                                       | –                                        | 1 027                                                    | 1 027     |
| Operating expense                       | –                                       | –                                        | (444 468)                                                | (444 468) |
| Investment revenue                      | –                                       | –                                        | 1 054                                                    | 1 054     |
| Finance costs                           | –                                       | –                                        | (5 129)                                                  | (5 129)   |
| Profit before taxation                  | –                                       | –                                        | 23 289                                                   | 23 289    |
| Taxation                                | –                                       | –                                        | (7 054)                                                  | (7 054)   |
| Total comprehensive income for the year | –                                       | –                                        | 16 235                                                   | 16 235    |

## Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income as at 30 June 2016

|                                         | Interest in<br>Pandora<br>joint venture | Interest in<br>Dwaalkop<br>joint venture | Interest in<br>Trans Hex<br>Group<br>Limited* | Interest in<br>SSG<br>Holdings<br>Proprietary<br>Limited | Total       |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
|                                         | R000                                    | R000                                     | R000                                          | R000                                                     | R000        |
| Sales                                   | 442 793                                 | –                                        | 544 286                                       | 110 063                                                  | 1 097 142   |
| Cost of sales and operating expenditure | (531 843)                               | –                                        | (548 079)                                     | (12 575)                                                 | (1 092 497) |
| Operating (loss)/profit                 | (89 050)                                | –                                        | (3 793)                                       | 97 488                                                   | 4 645       |
| Investment income                       | 1 004                                   | –                                        | 19 208                                        | 1                                                        | 20 213      |
| Sundry (expenditure)/income             | (79 206)                                | –                                        | 11 815                                        | 298                                                      | (67 093)    |
| Other operating costs                   | –                                       | –                                        | (173 894)                                     | (94 681)                                                 | (268 575)   |
| Finance charges                         | (1 014)                                 | –                                        | (3 959)                                       | (949)                                                    | (5 922)     |
| Profit from discontinued operations     | –                                       | –                                        | 24 533                                        | –                                                        | 24 533      |
| (Loss)/profit before tax                | (168 266)                               | –                                        | (126 090)                                     | 2 157                                                    | (292 199)   |
| Taxation                                | –                                       | –                                        | 27 565                                        | (312)                                                    | 27 253      |
| (Loss)/profit for the year              | (168 266)                               | –                                        | (98 525)                                      | 1 845                                                    | (264 946)   |
| Other comprehensive income              | –                                       | –                                        | (19 442)                                      | –                                                        | (19 442)    |
| Total comprehensive income for the year | (168 266)                               | –                                        | (117 967)                                     | 1 845                                                    | (284 388)   |

\* The period relates to 1 July 2015 to 9 May 2016.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

Below is a summary of the statement of financial position of the various associates and joint ventures:

## Statement of financial position as at 30 June 2017

|                               | Interest in<br>Pandora<br>joint venture | Interest in<br>Dwaalkop<br>joint venture | Interest in<br>SSG<br>Holdings<br>Proprietary<br>Limited | Total   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------|
|                               | R000                                    | R000                                     | R000                                                     | R000    |
| Non-current assets            | –                                       | –                                        | 47 279                                                   | 47 279  |
| Property, plant and equipment | –                                       | –                                        | 38 122                                                   | 38 122  |
| Goodwill                      | –                                       | –                                        | 4 500                                                    | 4 500   |
| Deferred tax asset            | –                                       | –                                        | 4 657                                                    | 4 657   |
| Current assets                | –                                       | –                                        | 80 209                                                   | 80 209  |
| Inventory                     | –                                       | –                                        | 1 625                                                    | 1 625   |
| Trade and other receivables   | –                                       | –                                        | 63 103                                                   | 63 103  |
| Cash and cash equivalents     | –                                       | –                                        | 15 481                                                   | 15 481  |
| Total assets                  | –                                       | –                                        | 127 488                                                  | 127 488 |
| Equity                        | –                                       | –                                        | 32 393                                                   | 32 393  |
| Non-current liabilities       | –                                       | –                                        | 22 337                                                   | 22 337  |
| Finance lease liabilities     | –                                       | –                                        | 22 337                                                   | 22 337  |
| Current liabilities           | –                                       | –                                        | 72 758                                                   | 72 758  |
| Trade and other payables      | –                                       | –                                        | 32 015                                                   | 32 015  |
| Finance lease liabilities     | –                                       | –                                        | 745                                                      | 745     |
| Current tax payable           | –                                       | –                                        | 3 557                                                    | 3 557   |
| Provisions                    | –                                       | –                                        | 9 219                                                    | 9 219   |
| Bank overdraft                | –                                       | –                                        | 27 222                                                   | 27 222  |
| Total equity and liabilities  | –                                       | –                                        | 127 488                                                  | 127 488 |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Statement of financial position as at 30 June 2016

|                                                            | Interest in<br>Pandora<br>joint venture | Interest in<br>Dwaalkop<br>joint venture | Interest in<br>Trans Hex<br>Group<br>Limited* | Interest in<br>SSG<br>Holdings<br>Proprietary<br>Limited | Total     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
|                                                            | R000                                    | R000                                     | R000                                          | R000                                                     | R000      |
| Non-current assets                                         | 771 894                                 | –                                        | –                                             | 30 850                                                   | 802 744   |
| Property, plant and equipment                              | 771 894                                 | –                                        | –                                             | 17 916                                                   | 789 810   |
| Goodwill                                                   | –                                       | –                                        | –                                             | 5 000                                                    | 5 000     |
| Deferred tax asset                                         | –                                       | –                                        | –                                             | 7 934                                                    | 7 934     |
| Current assets                                             | 325 347                                 | –                                        | –                                             | 52 138                                                   | 377 485   |
| Inventory                                                  | –                                       | –                                        | –                                             | 5 808                                                    | 5 808     |
| Trade and other receivables                                | 112 237                                 | –                                        | –                                             | 44 743                                                   | 156 980   |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                  | 21 896                                  | –                                        | –                                             | 1 587                                                    | 23 483    |
| Profit share loans due from participants                   | 191 214                                 | –                                        | –                                             | –                                                        | 191 214   |
| Total assets                                               | 1 097 241                               | –                                        | –                                             | 82 988                                                   | 1 180 229 |
| Equity                                                     | 1 019 369                               | –                                        | –                                             | (1 743)                                                  | 1 017 626 |
| Non-current liabilities                                    | 14 297                                  | –                                        | –                                             | 16 646                                                   | 30 943    |
| Provision for environmental and rehabilitation obligations | 14 297                                  | –                                        | –                                             | –                                                        | 14 297    |
| Long term liabilities                                      | –                                       | –                                        | –                                             | 16 646                                                   | 16 646    |
| Current liabilities                                        | 63 575                                  | –                                        | –                                             | 68 085                                                   | 131 660   |
| Royalties payable                                          | 75                                      | –                                        | –                                             | –                                                        | 75        |
| Trade and other payables                                   | 63 500                                  | –                                        | –                                             | 48 556                                                   | 112 056   |
| Provisions                                                 | –                                       | –                                        | –                                             | 4 541                                                    | 4 541     |
| Borrowings                                                 | –                                       | –                                        | –                                             | 14 988                                                   | 14 988    |
| Total equity and liabilities                               | 1 097 241                               | –                                        | –                                             | 82 988                                                   | 1 180 229 |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 7. Investment in subsidiaries

Below is a list of the various subsidiaries included in the Northam Platinum Limited group of companies:

|                                               | Group |      | Company    |            |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------|------|------------|------------|
|                                               | 2017  | 2016 | 2017       | 2016       |
|                                               | R000  | R000 | R000       | R000       |
| Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited          | –     | –    | 10 166 000 | 10 166 000 |
| Eland Platinum Proprietary Limited            | –     | –    | 50 000     | –          |
| Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited | –     | –    | *          | *          |
| Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited     | –     | –    | –          | –          |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited       | –     | –    | *          | *          |
| Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited            | –     | –    | –          | 70 000     |
| Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited    | –     | –    | –          | *          |
| Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited                 | –     | –    | *          | *          |
|                                               | –     | –    | 10 216 000 | 10 236 000 |

\* Represents an investment of less than R1 000.

All companies, except for the investment in Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited, are wholly owned and all entities are incorporated in the Republic of South Africa.

The following investments are held by Northam Platinum Limited:

505 (2016: 505) ordinary shares are held in Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited representing a 100% equity interest, to the value of R10.2 billion. Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited holds 100% of the share capital of Boysendal Platinum Proprietary Limited. Management is in the process of simplifying the group and as part of this process, Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited will be collapsed. Going forward the investment in Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited will be an investment held directly in Boysendal Platinum Proprietary Limited.

6 000 ordinary shares are held in Eland Platinum Proprietary Limited representing a 100% equity interest to the value of R50.0 million. This investment was made in the current year.

120 (2016: 120) ordinary shares are held in Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited representing a 100% equity interest and was acquired for R120, and is therefore less than R1 000.

Northam Platinum Limited holds 217 881 101 ordinary shares representing a 100% equity interest in Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited. The investment was fully impaired during previous financial years and is valued at R Nil.

100 (2016: 100) ordinary shares are held in Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited and was acquired for R100, and is therefore less than R1 000.

During the year under review both the investment in Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited and Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited, representing a 100% equity interest were restructured in terms of the corporate restructuring provisions contained in sections 41 to 47 of the Income Tax Act No. 58 of 1962 (the Act) (which have become known as the "corporate rules") provide for a deferral of tax where certain specified transactions are undertaken by taxpayers. Such transactions include: Liquidation, winding up and deregistration (section 47): a company distributes all of its assets to another company that is part of the same "group of companies" for tax purposes or that holds at least 95% of its ordinary share capital, in anticipation of its liquidation, winding up or deregistration. The corporate rules were introduced as a tax relief measure for transactions within groups of companies. Broadly speaking, provided that the requirements of the applicable section are met, the abovementioned transactions can be undertaken with no immediate capital gains tax or income tax implications for either party.

Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited's operations and assets were incorporated in the results of Northam Platinum Limited and is no longer a separate statutory entity. Similarly the operations and assets of Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited is in the process of being incorporated in the results of Boysendal Platinum Proprietary Limited and going forward no longer be a separate statutory entity.

Northam Platinum Limited holds a single N share in Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited as a protective right. Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited was created and designed for the sole purpose of providing Northam Platinum Limited with BEE credentials and as a structure to hold the listed BEE preference shares. If Northam does not comply with the HDSA requirements in the Mining Charter they will not be able to retain their mining rights. Northam is able to direct the strategic direction of Zambezi and as per the subscription and relationship agreement between the two companies, Zambezi's memorandum of incorporation may not be amended or replaced without Northam's prior written consent.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

Northam assumes full responsibility for the administration of Zambezi as well as any costs incurred by Zambezi up to a certain limit. Furthermore, Northam provides a guarantee for Zambezi's obligation in respect of the preference shares. All these points indicate that Northam has been involved from the inception of the transaction, to ensure that the design and operation of Zambezi achieves the purpose for which it was created.

In terms of the transaction, an "N" share was issued to Northam, which gave them the right to implement mitigating action should Zambezi not comply with certain undertakings as per the transaction's agreements and in other limited instances aimed at maintaining the integrity of the transaction at all times. Zambezi can also not dispose of the Northam ordinary shares without the prior consent of Northam. Northam has significant exposure to the variable returns of Zambezi, through the creation and maintenance of the BEE credentials during the 10-year lock-in period as well as through the guarantee provided by Northam. The decision making power of Zambezi's board of directors is restricted to maintaining Northam's BEE credentials and funding arrangements.

All of these factors have been considered in determining that even though Northam do not have majority of the voting rights in Zambezi, they still have control over the entity.

Details of the subsidiaries are included in the related party note, which forms part of these notes.

## Pooling of interest: Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited's operations

Below is a summary of how the results of Northam Platinum Limited company was derived. Effective 1 July 2017, the results of Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited was included in the results of the company as indicated below:

|                                                      | Northam<br>Chrome<br>Proprietary<br>Limited | Northam<br>Platinum<br>Limited | Total       |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------|
|                                                      | R000                                        | R000                           | R000        |
| Sales revenue                                        | 217 371                                     | 6 177 665                      | 6 395 036   |
| Cost of sales                                        | (24 037)                                    | (6 138 537)                    | (6 162 574) |
| Operating costs                                      | (24 774)                                    | (3 692 827)                    | (3 717 601) |
| Concentrates purchased                               | –                                           | (2 508 386)                    | (2 508 386) |
| Refining and other costs                             | –                                           | (120 633)                      | (120 633)   |
| Depreciation and write-offs                          | (1 802)                                     | (180 848)                      | (182 650)   |
| Change in metal inventories                          | 2 539                                       | 364 157                        | 366 696     |
| Operating profit                                     | 193 334                                     | 39 128                         | 232 462     |
| Investment revenue                                   | 1 382                                       | 124 661                        | 126 043     |
| Finance charges excluding preference share dividends | –                                           | (72 512)                       | (72 512)    |
| Net foreign exchange transaction losses/(gains)      | –                                           | (32 564)                       | (32 564)    |
| Sundry income                                        | –                                           | 64 233                         | 64 233      |
| Sundry expenditure                                   | –                                           | (60 587)                       | (60 587)    |
| Profit before tax                                    | 194 716                                     | 62 359                         | 257 075     |
| Taxation                                             | (54 139)                                    | (18 926)                       | (73 065)    |
| Profit for the year                                  | 140 577                                     | 43 433                         | 184 010     |

Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited and Northam entered into a corporate restructuring in terms of section 47 of the Income Tax Act. The corporate restructuring provisions contained in sections 41 to 47 of the Income Tax Act No. 58 of 1962 (the Act) (which have become known as the "corporate rules") provide for a deferral of tax where certain specified transactions are undertaken by taxpayers. Such transactions include: Liquidation, winding up and deregistration (section 47): a company distributes all of its assets to another company that is part of the same "group of companies" for tax purposes or that holds at least 95% of its ordinary share capital, in anticipation of its liquidation, winding up or deregistration. The corporate rules were introduced as a tax relief measure for transactions within groups of companies. Broadly speaking, provided that the requirements of the applicable section are met, the abovementioned transactions can be undertaken with no immediate capital gains tax or income tax implications for either party.

For tax purposes, the effective date of the transaction was 1 January 2017. However for accounting the results of Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited's operations and business has been incorporated in the results of Northam Platinum effective 1 July 2016.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 8. Unlisted investment

|                                                     | Group |      | Company |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------|------|---------|------|
|                                                     | 2017  | 2016 | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                     | R000  | R000 | R000    | R000 |
| Investment in Rand Mutual Assurance Company Limited | –     | 6    | –       | 6    |
|                                                     | –     | 6    | –       | 6    |

The unlisted investment represented an equity investment in a mining industry service organisation, Rand Mutual Assurance Company Limited. This investment was acquired a number of years ago to assist with the administration of occupational injuries and diseases. The shares were disclosed at cost as the fair value was not available as the shares are not traded in an active market. Management is not planning to dispose of these shares.

During the year the unlisted investment was impaired in full, and included in sundry expenditure (note 40).

## 9. Other investments

|                                                                       | Group |      | Company |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------|---------|------|
|                                                                       | 2017  | 2016 | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                                       | R000  | R000 | R000    | R000 |
| Investment in Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares at cost | –     | –    | 208 672 | –    |
| Accrued dividends from Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited (note 37)        | –     | –    | 19 205  | –    |
| Mark to market fair value adjustment                                  | –     | –    | 2 628   | –    |
|                                                                       | –     | –    | 230 505 | –    |

Northam Platinum Limited acquired 4 202 454 Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares during the year. The average at which these shares were purchased was R49.65 per share. These shares are classified as available for sale and revalued to the closing market value with movements accounted for in other comprehensive income. Accrued dividends are accounted for in profit or loss. Below is the closing market value of the preference shares as at 30 June:

|                      | Group |      | Company |       |
|----------------------|-------|------|---------|-------|
|                      | 2017  | 2016 | 2017    | 2016  |
|                      | R     | R    | R       | R     |
| Closing market value | –     | –    | 54.85   | 44.00 |

The fair value adjustment has been accounted for as follows:

|                                                         | Group |      | Company |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------|------|---------|------|
|                                                         | 2017  | 2016 | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                         | R000  | R000 | R000    | R000 |
| Fair value accounted through other comprehensive income | –     | –    | 2 628   | –    |
| Deferred tax                                            | –     | –    | (589)   | –    |
|                                                         | –     | –    | 2 039   | –    |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 10. Land and township development

|                                                                                                 | Group   |         | Company |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|--------|
|                                                                                                 | 2017    | 2016    | 2017    | 2016   |
|                                                                                                 | R000    | R000    | R000    | R000   |
| Balance at the beginning of the year                                                            | 51 341  | 10 000  | 18 218  | –      |
| Construction in progress and refurbishments relating to Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited | –       | 12 984  | –       | –      |
| <i>Acquisitions</i>                                                                             |         |         |         |        |
| Portion 22 of the Farm Leeukopje                                                                | 6 764   | 1 908   | 6 764   | 1 908  |
| Portion 4 & 9 of the Farm Koedoesdoorns                                                         | 297     | 5 608   | 297     | 5 608  |
| Phelobontle Mogwase                                                                             | 370     | 11 169  | 370     | 11 169 |
| Lydenburg extension 78 – Booysendal Platinum Proprietary Limited                                | 66      | 5 980   | –       | –      |
| Lydenburg extension 79 – Booysendal Platinum Proprietary Limited                                | 65      | 5 974   | –       | –      |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited                                                         | 804     | –       | –       | –      |
| <i>Disposals</i>                                                                                |         |         |         |        |
| Phelobontle, Mogwase units                                                                      | (2 900) | (467)   | (2 900) | (467)  |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited units                                                   | (8 278) | (1 815) | –       | –      |
| Balance at end of year                                                                          | 48 529  | 51 341  | 22 749  | 18 218 |

These properties have been acquired in order to assist the group's employees to acquire affordable housing.

Below is a reconciliation of the number of houses available for sale relating to Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited:

|                                                                                | Group |       | Company |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------|---------|------|
|                                                                                | 2017  | 2016  | 2017    | 2016 |
| Number of properties developed available for sale                              | 415   | 415   | –       | –    |
| Houses sold to date since inception of Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited | (421) | (398) | –       | –    |
| Properties surrendered/repurchased                                             | 39    | 37    | –       | –    |
| Closing number of properties available                                         | 33    | 54    | –       | –    |



# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 11. Long term receivables

|                                                                                            | Group   |         | Company |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|------|
|                                                                                            | 2017    | 2016    | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                                                            | R000    | R000    | R000    | R000 |
| Long term receivables                                                                      | 91 079  | 95 334  | –       | –    |
| Current portion of long term receivables included in trade and other receivables (note 19) | (7 334) | (5 617) | –       | –    |
|                                                                                            | 83 745  | 89 717  | –       | –    |

Long-term receivables comprise balances due by employees in respect of Northam's employee home ownership scheme under suspensive sale agreements. The loans to the employees bear interest at prime and repayable over 15 years. In terms of the agreements, employees enjoy the full benefits of home ownership, and at such time as the loan is paid off, the title to the houses will be transferred to the employees.

As at 30 June 2017 there were no receivables (2016: R Nil) which were impaired and fully provided for.

Previously the group pledged the instalment sales agreements as security for the loan secured from *Nederlandse Financierings-Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV*. However, during the year, the loan was repaid in full and the balances receivable relating to the instalment sales agreement is no longer pledged as security.

## 12. Investments held by the Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund

The group contributes to a dedicated environmental restoration trust fund to provide for the estimated decommissioning and environmental restoration cost at the end of the mine's life.

The balance of the fund comprises:

|                                                                             | Group   |        | Company |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--------|---------|--------|
|                                                                             | 2017    | 2016   | 2017    | 2016   |
|                                                                             | R000    | R000   | R000    | R000   |
| Balance at the beginning of the year                                        | 93 647  | 49 092 | 43 204  | 38 868 |
| Contributions received with the acquisition of the Everest mineral reserves | –       | 33 900 | –       | –      |
| Contributions received from Northam Platinum Limited                        | –       | 1 532  | –       | 1 532  |
| Contributions received from Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited        | –       | 3 018  | –       | –      |
| Other                                                                       | –       | 18     | –       | 10     |
| Income earned during the year (note 37)                                     | 8 586   | 6 087  | 5 070   | 2 794  |
| Balance at the end of the year                                              | 102 233 | 93 647 | 48 274  | 43 204 |

The assets, which mainly consist of cash, of the Fund are separately administered and the group's right of access to these funds is restricted. This investment is managed by Stanlib Collective Investments (RF) Limited, and is made up of a fixed number of units which trades at specific values.

The Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund was established in 1996 to assist the group in making financial provision for the environmental rehabilitation of the mine, in terms of the Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act no 28 of 2002, upon cessation of its mining operations.

During the prior year the Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund, amended the Trust Deed. In future, contributions relating to rehabilitation is no longer limited to contributions to the Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund. The group may make use of any approved financial vehicles in terms of regulations and legislation, also see note 13.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 13. Environmental Guarantee Investment

The investment held with regards to the environmental guarantee investment was issued in terms of the insurance guarantee relating to the environmental liability. The investment as noted below has been provided as security for the insurance guarantees issued.

The balance of the fund comprises:

|                                                       | Group  |        | Company |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
|                                                       | 2017   | 2016   | 2017    | 2016   |
|                                                       | R000   | R000   | R000    | R000   |
| Balance at the beginning of the year                  | 60 345 | 52 122 | 49 187  | 44 137 |
| Contributions made during the year                    | –      | 6 000  | –       | 3 000  |
| Income earned during the year (net of fees) (note 39) | 7 759  | 2 223  | 5 320   | 2 050  |
| Balance at the end of the year                        | 68 104 | 60 345 | 54 507  | 49 187 |

The assets, which mainly consist of cash, are separately administered and the group's right of access to these funds is restricted.

This investment is managed by Guardrisk Insurance Company Limited.

Below is a summary of the various guarantees issued:

|                      | Group   |         | Company |        |
|----------------------|---------|---------|---------|--------|
|                      | 2017    | 2016    | 2017    | 2016   |
|                      | R000    | R000    | R000    | R000   |
| GR/G/20396/0312/0031 | 31 000  | 31 000  | 31 000  | 31 000 |
| GR/G/20396/0311/0011 | 65 900  | 65 900  | –       | –      |
| GR/G/20396/0314/165  | 18 000  | 18 000  | 18 000  | 18 000 |
| GR/G/20396/0315/0231 | 18 000  | 18 000  | 18 000  | 18 000 |
| GR/G/20396/0315/0232 | 25 000  | 25 000  | –       | –      |
| GR/G/20396/0317/0433 | 50 000  | –       | –       | –      |
| GR/G/20396/0417/0434 | 1 908   | –       | –       | –      |
| GR/G/20396/0617/0454 | 35 000  | –       | 35 000  | –      |
|                      | 244 808 | 157 900 | 102 000 | 67 000 |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 14. Buttonshope Conservancy Trust

The balance of the fund comprises:

|                                                                      | Group  |         | Company |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|---------|------|
|                                                                      | 2017   | 2016    | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                                      | R000   | R000    | R000    | R000 |
| Balance at the beginning of the year                                 | 10 445 | 11 037  | –       | –    |
| Contributions received from Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited | 425    | 400     | –       | –    |
| Interest received during the year                                    | 795    | 701     | –       | –    |
| Fair value adjustments                                               | (16)   | 54      | –       | –    |
| Funds utilised to acquire a property                                 | (398)  | (1 289) | –       | –    |
| Settlement of outstanding loan balances                              | –      | (403)   | –       | –    |
| Less expenditure paid during the year                                | (125)  | (55)    | –       | –    |
| Balance at the end of the year                                       | 11 126 | 10 445  | –       | –    |

The trust was established as a conservancy trust by Northam Platinum Limited, with the principal objective of engaging in the conservation, rehabilitation and/or protection of the natural environment, including flora, fauna and the biosphere as well as promoting the establishment of, and education and training programmes relating to, environmental awareness, greening, clean-up and/or sustainable development projects in respect of Portion 1 of the Farm Buttonshope 51, Registration Division JT, Mpumalanga Province, and which may involve the participation by local communities. The aforementioned property is owned by Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited, an indirect subsidiary of Northam Platinum Limited. An initial contribution of R10.0 million was made by Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited in terms of the trust agreement.

Funds of R2.9 million (2016: R2.2 million) are invested with Standard Bank Limited in a call account and R8.2 million (2016: R8.2 million) is held in an Extra Income Fund with Stanlib Collective Investments (RF) Limited.

This investment is managed by Stanlib Collective Investments (RF) Limited, and is made up of a fixed number of units which trades at specific values. The assets, which mainly consist of cash, of the trust are separately administered and the group's right of access to these funds is restricted.

On an annual basis Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited will donate a fixed amount of R400 000 per annum from F2016 regardless of the operational performance with a fixed increase of R25 000 per annum. During the current year an amount of R425 000 was donated (2016: R400 000).

The Buttonshope Conservancy Trust also owns Portion 1 of Sheeprun 50, property measuring 256.9596 hectares held under Title deed T4813/2016.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 15. Long term prepayments

In terms of the aerial ropeway manufacturer agreement with Doppelmayr Transport Technology GmbH, a prepayment had to be made in terms of the manufacturing costs. These amounts will be transferred to property, plant and equipment as and when construction has been signed over by the contractor.

|                                                         | Group   |      | Company |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------|------|---------|------|
|                                                         | 2017    | 2016 | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                         | R000    | R000 | R000    | R000 |
| Amounts prepaid to Doppelmayr Transport Technology GmbH | 336 409 | –    | –       | –    |
|                                                         | 336 409 | –    | –       | –    |

## 16. Other assets

|                                                                        | Group   |      | Company |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|------|---------|------|
|                                                                        | 2017    | 2016 | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                                        | R000    | R000 | R000    | R000 |
| Transaction costs paid: Nedbank revolving credit facility              | 8 594   | –    | 8 594   | –    |
| Amortisation of transaction costs over a period of 60 months (note 38) | (1 003) | –    | (1 003) | –    |
|                                                                        | 7 591   | –    | 7 591   | –    |

Transaction costs was paid for the arrangement of the Nedbank Limited revolving credit facility which is amortised over the period of the facility which is 60 months from inception of the facility, and will be amortised as such.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 17. Subsidiary loans

|                                              | Group |      | Company |        |
|----------------------------------------------|-------|------|---------|--------|
|                                              | 2017  | 2016 | 2017    | 2016   |
|                                              | R000  | R000 | R000    | R000   |
| <i>Long term subsidiary loans receivable</i> |       |      |         |        |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited      | –     | –    | –       | 24 456 |
|                                              | –     | –    | –       | 24 456 |

The loan between Northam Platinum Limited and Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited accrued interest at 2.0% below the South African prime interest rate and was repayable once the loan from the *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV* had been repaid by Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited.

However during the year under review management repaid the outstanding loan from *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV* in full, and therefore the long term subsidiary loan was no longer required in terms of the agreement between Northam Platinum Limited and the *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV*.

During the year the outstanding interest was repaid in full and the outstanding balance was transferred to the short term subsidiary loans receivables as listed below.

|                                               | Group |      | Company   |           |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------|------|-----------|-----------|
|                                               | 2017  | 2016 | 2017      | 2016      |
|                                               | R000  | R000 | R000      | R000      |
| <i>Short term subsidiary loans receivable</i> |       |      |           |           |
| Booyssendal Platinum Proprietary Limited*     | –     | –    | 1 720 088 | 2 262 163 |
| Buttonshepe Conservancy Trust                 | –     | –    | –         | –         |
| Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited     | –     | –    | –         | 1 047     |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited       | –     | –    | 81 893    | 37 724    |
| Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited    | –     | –    | 9 689     | 14 590    |
| Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited*         | –     | –    | –         | 1         |
| Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited | –     | –    | 26 543    | 15 002    |
|                                               | –     | –    | 1 838 213 | 2 330 527 |

*\*These loans will going forward no longer be required, as these loans have either been capitalised or are in the process of being capitalised as part of the restructuring of the Northam group.*

The loan between Northam Platinum Limited and Booyssendal Platinum Proprietary Limited does not accrue interest. Regular repayments are however made on the outstanding loan balance. Management is in the process of cleaning up the group and the intermediate holding company, Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited will be collapsed. The loan between Northam Platinum Limited and Booyssendal Platinum Proprietary Limited will therefore be capitalised subsequent to year-end.

The loan between Northam Platinum Limited and Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited previously bore interest at 2.0% below the South African prime interest rate, repayable on demand and therefore stated as current. All accrued interest for the year and previous year was repaid in full. The loan will be transferred in full to Booyssendal Platinum Proprietary Limited once all the properties held by Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited have been transferred.

All other loans are interest free, unsecured and repayable on demand.

Details of the subsidiaries are set out in the related party note, which forms part of these notes.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 18. Inventories

|                                                                 | Group     |           | Company   |           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                                                                 | 2017      | 2016      | 2017      | 2016      |
|                                                                 | R000      | R000      | R000      | R000      |
| <i>Metals on hand and in transit at net realisable value</i>    |           |           |           |           |
| Platinum                                                        | 982 568   | 858 412   | 976 504   | 875 758   |
| Palladium                                                       | 424 903   | 226 298   | 422 172   | 230 792   |
| Rhodium                                                         | 197 320   | 122 846   | 196 268   | 125 825   |
| Gold                                                            | 28 163    | 25 808    | 28 058    | 26 470    |
| Total metal inventories                                         | 1 632 954 | 1 233 364 | 1 623 002 | 1 258 845 |
| Chrome finished product at cost                                 | –         | 387       | –         | –         |
| Consumable stores at cost                                       | 96 148    | 96 519    | 49 998    | 49 411    |
| Total inventories at the lower of cost and net realisable value | 1 729 102 | 1 330 270 | 1 673 000 | 1 308 256 |

|                                      | OZ      | OZ      | OZ      | OZ      |
|--------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| <i>Metals on hand and in transit</i> |         |         |         |         |
| Platinum                             | 92 646  | 62 169  | 85 139  | 60 835  |
| Palladium                            | 45 641  | 28 943  | 42 047  | 28 310  |
| Rhodium                              | 18 485  | 13 358  | 17 272  | 13 147  |
| Gold                                 | 1 950   | 1 467   | 1 850   | 1 447   |
|                                      | 158 722 | 105 937 | 146 308 | 103 739 |

The metals above include stockpiles, in process metal as well as finished goods. Metal inventory is allocated as follows in the process:

|                                      | OZ      | OZ      | OZ      | OZ      |
|--------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| <i>Metals on hand and in transit</i> |         |         |         |         |
| Stockpile inventory                  | 23 377  | 8 149   | 10 963  | 5 951   |
| Concentrate in process               | 8 928   | 1 506   | 8 928   | 1 506   |
| Concentrate before the smelter       | 55 867  | 28 967  | 55 867  | 28 967  |
| Smelter inventory                    | 28 705  | 15 657  | 28 705  | 15 657  |
| Base metal removal plant inventory   | 4 581   | 8 689   | 4 581   | 8 689   |
| Precious metal refiner inventory     | 37 138  | 41 729  | 37 138  | 41 729  |
| Finished product inventory on hand   | 126     | 1 240   | 126     | 1 240   |
|                                      | 158 722 | 105 937 | 146 308 | 103 739 |

The cost of sales figure disclosed in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income approximates the cost of inventory expensed.

Included in cost of sales are metals on hand that were written down by R444.3 million (2016: R360.8 million) to net realisable value. Inventory to the value of R478.4 million (2016: R927.7 million) is disclosed at net realisable value.

Inventory in the pipeline is considered to be between 60 000 and 70 000 ounces of metal at any given time all inventory over and above pipeline material is considered excess inventory.

No inventories are encumbered.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 19. Trade and other receivables

|                                                     | Group   |         | Company |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                     | 2017    | 2016    | 2017    | 2016    |
|                                                     | R000    | R000    | R000    | R000    |
| Trade receivables                                   | 283 146 | 159 603 | 231 195 | 137 434 |
| Accrued interest                                    | 11 989  | 24 700  | 9 712   | 8 025   |
| Prepayments                                         | 44 797  | 7 306   | 40 067  | 6 618   |
| Deposits                                            | 2 889   | 250     | 164     | 142     |
| South African Revenue Service – Value added tax     | 143 775 | 114 364 | 117 740 | 87 656  |
| South African Revenue Service – Mineral royalties   | 17 258  | 16 096  | 17 226  | 16 096  |
| Current portion of long term receivables            | 7 334   | 5 617   | –       | –       |
| Receivable from Eland Platinum Proprietary Limited  | –       | –       | 13 616  | –       |
| Loan to SSG Holdings Proprietary Limited            | –       | 5 000   | –       | –       |
| Receivable from Northam Zondereinde Community Trust | –       | –       | 2 351   | –       |
| Receivable from Northam Booyseindal Community Trust | –       | –       | 2 351   | –       |
| Receivable from Northam Employee Trust              | –       | –       | 2 352   | –       |
| Interest free home loans                            | 6 367   | 4 449   | 4 764   | 4 162   |
| Other                                               | 31 442  | 37 819  | 46 418  | 14 220  |
|                                                     | 548 997 | 375 204 | 487 956 | 274 353 |

The interest-free home loans to employees relate to the employee home ownership scheme. Non-interest bearing loans are provided to qualifying employees. These loans are repayable over 20 years from grant date. The average remaining repayment period is between 10 and 20 years. The market-related effective interest rate is the South African prime interest rate. These loans are secured by a second bond over residential properties.

The exposure to foreign currency denominated balances as at 30 June were as follows:

|            | Group  |        | Company |        |
|------------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
|            | 2017   | 2016   | 2017    | 2016   |
|            | USD000 | USD000 | USD000  | USD000 |
| US Dollars | 13 279 | 6 351  | 13 279  | 6 351  |

Trade receivables are unsecured, non-interest bearing and are generally on either 30 or 60-day payment terms. Platinum group metal debtors have payment terms of between 2 to 5 days.

At 30 June 2017 R Nil was impaired (2016: R Nil). The table below summarises the maturity profile of the company and group's trade and other receivables:

|                               |         |         |         |         |
|-------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Neither past due nor impaired | 452 542 | 264 234 | 400 766 | 189 080 |
| 30 to 60 days                 | 48 565  | 44 704  | 45 579  | 44 318  |
| 60 to 90 days                 | 21 885  | 5 903   | 17 921  | 5 903   |
| More than 90 days*            | 26 005  | 60 363  | 23 690  | 35 052  |
|                               | 548 997 | 375 204 | 487 956 | 274 353 |

\* Management considers these amounts to be fully recoverable.

Trade receivables and advances by country are as follows:

|                          |         |         |         |         |
|--------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| South Africa             | 372 347 | 277 640 | 311 306 | 176 789 |
| United Kingdom           | 40 510  | –       | 40 510  | –       |
| Australia                | 3 749   | –       | 3 749   | –       |
| Germany                  | 63 232  | 46 973  | 63 232  | 46 973  |
| Japan                    | 3 288   | 4 176   | 3 288   | 4 176   |
| United States of America | 65 871  | 46 415  | 65 871  | 46 415  |
|                          | 548 997 | 375 204 | 487 956 | 274 353 |

Refer to note 46 for fair value and financial risk disclosure.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 20. Cash and cash equivalents

|                          | Group     |           | Company   |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                          | 2017      | 2016      | 2017      | 2016      |
|                          | R000      | R000      | R000      | R000      |
| Cash at bank and on hand | 478 974   | 543 197   | 468 213   | 542 018   |
| Restricted cash          | 103 949   | 109 521   | 23 000    | 23 000    |
| Short term deposits      | 1 203 942 | 2 452 362 | 905 464   | 1 089 399 |
|                          | 1 786 865 | 3 105 080 | 1 396 677 | 1 654 417 |

The exposure to foreign currency denominated balances as at 30 June were as follows:

|            | Group  |        | Company |        |
|------------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
|            | 2017   | 2016   | 2017    | 2016   |
|            | USD000 | USD000 | USD000  | USD000 |
| US Dollars | 35 655 | 36 636 | 35 655  | 36 636 |

Cash at bank earns interest at floating rates based on daily bank deposit rates. Short-term deposits are made for varying periods depending on the immediate cash requirements of the group and earn interest at the respective short-term deposit rates.

The weighted average effective interest rate on short-term deposits was 8.2% (30 June 2016: 8.2%) and these deposits have a maximum maturity of 90 days (30 June 2016: 90 days).

At 30 June 2017 the group had R1.0 billion (30 June 2016: R1.0 billion) of undrawn committed borrowing facilities.

Restricted cash includes a guarantee of R23.0 million relating to an electricity supply agreement between Northam Platinum Limited and Eskom Holdings SOC Limited. Restricted cash also includes money ringfenced for the benefit of the Northam Employee Trust, the Northam Zondereinde Community Trust, the Northam Booyensdal Community Trust and Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited which may only be spent in terms of the various Trust deeds and Memorandum of Incorporation.

Previously included in restricted cash was an amount of R8.5 million that was pledged to the *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV* by Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited as a debt service reserve account, as security for servicing of the loan from *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV*. During the year the loan was repaid in full and the pledged amount is therefore no longer required. Management is currently exploring various options with regards to Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited.

For the purposes of the statement of cash flows, cash and cash equivalents comprise on the above balances as the group currently has no bank overdrafts.

Also refer to note 46 for fair value and financial risk disclosure.



# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 21. Stated capital

|                                             | Group            |                  | Company         |                  |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
|                                             | 2017             | 2016             | 2017            | 2016             |
|                                             | Number of shares | Number of shares | Number of share | Number of shares |
| <i>Authorised share capital</i>             |                  |                  |                 |                  |
| 2 000 000 000 share capital at no par value |                  |                  |                 |                  |
| <i>Issued share capital</i>                 |                  |                  |                 |                  |
| Issued share capital                        | 509 781 212      | 509 781 212      | 509 781 212     | 509 781 212      |
| Treasury shares                             | (159 905 453)    | (159 905 453)    | –               | –                |
|                                             | 349 875 759      | 349 875 759      | 509 781 212     | 509 781 212      |

|                      | Group       |             | Company    |            |
|----------------------|-------------|-------------|------------|------------|
|                      | 2017        | 2016        | 2017       | 2016       |
|                      | R000        | R000        | R000       | R000       |
| Issued share capital | 13 778 114  | 13 778 114  | 13 778 114 | 13 778 114 |
| Treasury shares      | (6 556 123) | (6 556 123) | –          | –          |
|                      | 7 221 991   | 7 221 991   | 13 778 114 | 13 778 114 |

Details of share capital and shares held by the directors are contained in the director's report.

Treasury shares relates to the shares owned by Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 22. Equity settled share based payment reserve

|                                      | Group   |         | Company   |           |
|--------------------------------------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|
|                                      | 2017    | 2016    | 2017      | 2016      |
|                                      | R000    | R000    | R000      | R000      |
| Equity settled share payment reserve | 874 448 | 874 448 | 1 173 756 | 1 173 756 |
|                                      | 874 448 | 874 448 | 1 173 756 | 1 173 756 |

The issue of preference shares by Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited resulted in a need to account for a share based payment charge and related reserve in terms of IFRS 2 Share based payments. The actual share based payment charge and related reserve were calculated according to market information available as at grant date.

A Black-Scholes option model was used to determine the share based payment expense.

The BEE shares issued to the Northam Employees' Trust vested immediately on grant date.

There were no new equity settled share based payment transactions during the current or previous year and therefore no changes to the above reserve.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 23. Deferred tax asset and liability

The principal components of the deferred tax asset and liability are as follows:

|                                                                                             | Group            |                  | Company          |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
|                                                                                             | 2017             | 2016             | 2017             | 2016             |
|                                                                                             | R000             | R000             | R000             | R000             |
| <i>Deferred tax assets</i>                                                                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |
| Employee benefits relating to leave pay and bonus provisions                                | 70 513           | 52 343           | 61 624           | 52 343           |
| Decommissioning and environmental restoration provisions                                    | 85 352           | 35 309           | 39 560           | 35 309           |
| Share based payment liability                                                               | 45 826           | 27 115           | 27 502           | 27 115           |
| Metal inventory                                                                             | 11 096           | –                | –                | –                |
| Deferred income                                                                             | 39 200           | –                | 19 600           | –                |
| Calculated tax loss                                                                         | –                | 965              | –                | –                |
|                                                                                             | 251 987          | 115 732          | 148 286          | 114 767          |
| <i>Deferred tax liabilities</i>                                                             |                  |                  |                  |                  |
| Property, plant and equipment                                                               | (803 660)        | (685 832)        | (725 865)        | (683 621)        |
| Metal inventory                                                                             | –                | (2 049)          | (13 580)         | (13 984)         |
| Restoration trust fund                                                                      | (28 625)         | (12 097)         | (13 517)         | (12 097)         |
| Items accounted for directly through other comprehensive income                             | –                | –                | (589)            | –                |
| Section 24C allowances in respect of long term receivables                                  | (5 585)          | (6 391)          | –                | –                |
|                                                                                             | (837 870)        | (706 369)        | (753 551)        | (709 702)        |
| <b>Net deferred tax liability</b>                                                           | <b>(585 883)</b> | <b>(590 637)</b> | <b>(605 265)</b> | <b>(594 935)</b> |
| The charge in the deferred tax balance is reconciled as follows:                            |                  |                  |                  |                  |
| Net deferred tax liability at the beginning of the year                                     | (446 305)        | (521 452)        | (594 935)        | (527 234)        |
| Items accounted for directly through other comprehensive income                             | –                | –                | (589)            | –                |
| Charge for the year                                                                         | (139 578)        | (69 185)         | (9 741)          | (67 701)         |
| Temporary difference in respect of employee benefits                                        | 10 945           | 3 215            | 9 281            | 4 019            |
| Temporary difference in respect of decommissioning and environmental restoration provisions | 12 885           | 3 246            | 4 251            | 3 246            |
| Temporary difference in respect of share based payment liabilities                          | 6 324            | (3 184)          | 387              | (3 184)          |
| Temporary difference in respect of deferred income                                          | 39 200           | –                | 19 600           | –                |
| Calculated tax loss                                                                         | (965)            | (595)            | –                | –                |
| Temporary differences in respect of property, plant and equipment                           | (219 851)        | (73 759)         | (42 244)         | (61 339)         |
| Depreciation component included in metals on hand and in transit                            | 13 482           | 2 706            | 404              | (9 229)          |
| Temporary differences in respect of restoration trust fund                                  | (2 404)          | (1 214)          | (1 420)          | (1 214)          |
| Section 24C allowance in respect of long term receivables                                   | 806              | 400              | –                | –                |
| <b>Net deferred tax liability</b>                                                           | <b>(585 883)</b> | <b>(590 637)</b> | <b>(605 265)</b> | <b>(594 935)</b> |

The group offsets deferred tax assets and liabilities if and only if it has a legally enforceable right to set off current tax assets and current tax liabilities and the deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities relate to income taxes levied by the same tax authority.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Boysendal Platinum Proprietary Limited deferred tax asset

The below disclosure have been included for completeness as Boysendal Platinum Proprietary Limited was in a net deferred tax asset position in the prior year.

The group offsets deferred tax assets and liabilities if and only if it has a legally enforceable right to set off current tax assets and current tax liabilities and the deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities relate to income taxes levied by the same tax authority.

In the current year Boysendal Platinum Proprietary Limited is in a net deferred tax liability position and therefore incorporated in the group results disclose on the previous page.

The principal components of the deferred tax asset and liability were as follows:

|                                                                                             | Group          |                | Company |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|---------|------|
|                                                                                             | 2017           | 2016           | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                                                             | R000           | R000           | R000    | R000 |
| <i>Deferred tax assets</i>                                                                  |                |                |         |      |
| Property, plant and equipment (unredeemed capex)                                            | –              | 102 023        |         |      |
| Employee benefits relating to leave pay and bonus provisions                                | 8 889          | 7 225          |         |      |
| Decommissioning and environmental restoration provisions                                    | 45 792         | 37 158         |         |      |
| Deferred income                                                                             | 19 600         | –              |         |      |
| Share based payment liability                                                               | 18 325         | 12 387         |         |      |
|                                                                                             | 92 606         | 158 793        |         |      |
| <i>Deferred tax liabilities</i>                                                             |                |                |         |      |
| Property, plant and equipment                                                               | (77 796)       | –              |         |      |
| Metal inventory                                                                             | (5 072)        | (337)          |         |      |
| Restoration trust fund                                                                      | (15 108)       | (14 124)       |         |      |
|                                                                                             | (97 976)       | (14 461)       |         |      |
| <b>Net deferred tax (liability)/asset</b>                                                   | <b>(5 370)</b> | <b>144 332</b> |         |      |
| The charge in the deferred tax balance is reconciled as follows:                            |                |                |         |      |
| Deferred tax asset at the beginning of the year                                             | 144 332        | 172 611        |         |      |
| Charge for the year                                                                         | (149 702)      | (28 279)       |         |      |
| Temporary differences in respect of property, plant and equipment                           | (179 819)      | (42 643)       |         |      |
| Temporary difference in respect of employee benefits                                        | 1 664          | 2 065          |         |      |
| Temporary difference in respect of decommissioning and environmental restoration provisions | 8 634          | 16 800         |         |      |
| Temporary difference in respect of share based payment liabilities                          | 5 938          | 6 150          |         |      |
| Temporary difference in respect of deferred income                                          | 19 600         | –              |         |      |
| Depreciation component included in metals on hand and in transit                            | (4 735)        | 610            |         |      |
| Temporary differences in respect of restoration trust fund                                  | (984)          | (11 261)       |         |      |
| <b>Net deferred tax (liability)/asset</b>                                                   | <b>(5 370)</b> | <b>144 332</b> |         |      |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 24. Long term provisions

|                                                                                                           | Group   |         | Company |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                                                           | 2017    | 2016    | 2017    | 2016    |
|                                                                                                           | R000    | R000    | R000    | R000    |
| Rehabilitation and decommissioning liability provision                                                    | 304 829 | 258 808 | 141 284 | 126 101 |
| Long term portion of leave pay provision (refer note 32)                                                  | –       | 14 012  | –       | 13 215  |
|                                                                                                           | 304 829 | 272 820 | 141 284 | 139 316 |
| Below is a breakdown of the rehabilitation and decommission liability provision                           |         |         |         |         |
| <i>Provision for decommissioning costs</i>                                                                |         |         |         |         |
| Balance at the beginning of the year                                                                      | 208 279 | 149 968 | 98 169  | 95 145  |
| Additional provision acquired with the acquisition of the Everest mineral reserves which was fully funded | –       | 22 327  | –       | –       |
| Unwinding of discount                                                                                     | 35 238  | –       | 18 037  | –       |
| Change in estimate and capitalisation of decommissioning costs                                            | 4 530   | 35 984  | (5 821) | 3 024   |
|                                                                                                           | 248 047 | 208 279 | 110 385 | 98 169  |
| <i>Provision for restoration costs</i>                                                                    |         |         |         |         |
| Balance at the beginning of the year                                                                      | 50 529  | 37 249  | 27 932  | 19 364  |
| Additional provision acquired with the acquisition of the Everest mineral reserves which was fully funded | –       | 11 580  | –       | –       |
| Unwinding of discount                                                                                     | 6 253   | 1 700   | 2 967   | 8 568   |
|                                                                                                           | 56 782  | 50 529  | 30 899  | 27 932  |
| Total rehabilitation and decommissioning liability provision                                              | 304 829 | 258 808 | 141 284 | 126 101 |

In terms of, *inter alia*, the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act no 28, of 2002, the company is required to make financial provision for its decommissioning and restoration costs that will be incurred upon the cessation of mining activities. The future value of the environmental obligation could either be paid over to Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund over the remaining life of the Zondereinde mine and over the remaining life of the Booysendal mine. The group may also make use of any approved financial vehicles in terms regulations and legislation. Financial provision is not however required to be made for the decommissioning of certain structures, such as housing, which may have alternative use.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

The present value of the environmental restoration obligation is determined by applying a pre-tax discount rate of 10.62% (2016: 10.62%) and a long term inflation rate of 8.71% (2016: 8.71%) over the remaining life of the mines.

The decommissioning and restoration costs are reviewed on an annual basis, and at the reporting date the net unfunded future obligations were as follows:

|                                                                                             | Group     |           | Company   |          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
|                                                                                             | 2017      | 2016      | 2017      | 2016     |
|                                                                                             | R000      | R000      | R000      | R000     |
| Undiscounted decommissioning obligations based on the Department of Mineral Resources rates | 181 083   | 166 574   | 99 599    | 91 619   |
| Undiscounted restoration obligations on the Department of Mineral Resources rates           | 88 255    | 81 184    | 53 379    | 49 102   |
| Total rehabilitation obligations                                                            | 269 338   | 247 758   | 152 978   | 140 721  |
| Less funds held by Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund (note 12)                        | (102 233) | (93 647)  | (48 274)  | (43 204) |
| Environmental insurance guarantees (note 13)                                                | (244 808) | (157 900) | (102 000) | (67 000) |
| Total (overfunded)/unfunded current rehabilitation obligation                               | (77 703)  | (3 789)   | 2 704     | 30 517   |

The group has procured the issue of an insurance guarantee for R244.8 million (2016: R157.9 million) in respect of the unfunded decommissioning and restoration costs, of which R102.0 million (2016: R67.0 million) relates to the company.

The future value of the environmental rehabilitation obligation can either be paid over to the Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund over the remaining life of the mines, or through other financial provision, insurance or financial products as approved by the Department of Mineral Resources in terms of legislation.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 25. Long term loans

|                                                                                              | Group   |         | Company |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                                              | 2017    | 2016    | 2017    | 2016    |
|                                                                                              | R000    | R000    | R000    | R000    |
| <i>Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV</i>                    | –       | 39 964  | –       | –       |
| Security of supply contribution                                                              | 38 992  | –       | 38 992  | –       |
| Heraeus Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG                                                            | 223 870 | 248 750 | 223 870 | 248 750 |
| Total long term loans                                                                        | 262 862 | 288 714 | 262 862 | 248 750 |
| Current portion of <i>Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV</i> | –       | (3 801) | –       | –       |
| Current portion of security of supply contribution                                           | (4 034) | –       | (4 034) | –       |
| Current portion of Heraeus Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG                                         | (9 400) | (9 400) | (9 400) | (9 400) |
|                                                                                              | 249 428 | 275 513 | 249 428 | 239 350 |

The exposure to foreign currency denominated balances as at 30 June was as follows:

|                                                      | Group  |        | Company |        |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
|                                                      | 2017   | 2016   | 2017    | 2016   |
|                                                      | €000   | €000   | €000    | €000   |
| Amounts denominated in € included in long term loans | 10 000 | 10 000 | 10 000  | 10 000 |

A decision was taken to repay the loan from the *Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV* during the current year. The loan was repayable in equal bi-annual instalments over 15 years, bore interest at 3.5% above JIBAR, with the last payment due 30 September 2026. The group previously pledged the instalment sales agreement as security for the loan as referred to in the long-term receivable note. The loan was repaid due to the restrictive requirements, which was not conducive to achieving the housing strategy of the group.

The security of supply contribution relates to amounts received in advance for the supply of future product.

Heraeus Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG contributed €10.0 million to the new 20MW furnace. The contribution received was recognised as a liability, as the company is obligated to refund the amount to Heraeus Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG if, and only if the company does not commission the furnace on time. Once the furnace is commissioned and the second €10.0 million is received, the €20.0 million will be deducted from the cost of the smelter as the value contributed is effectively considered a rebate in terms of IAS 16.16(a). The contribution is included in the balance above. In terms of an agreement entered into by the company and Heraeus Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG an annual payment of R9.4 million will be made for development and research costs for a period of 20 years. A liability was recognised at contract inception, being 16 April 2016. The liability is measured at the present value of the R9.4 million payments over 20 years using the prevailing prime interest rate. The contra side of the entry was included as cost to the furnace.

The present value of these annual payments amounted to R74.7 million and is included in the table above.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 26. Financial guarantee liability

|                                                             | Group |      | Company   |           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------|-----------|-----------|
|                                                             | 2017  | 2016 | 2017      | 2016      |
|                                                             | R000  | R000 | R000      | R000      |
| Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited financial guarantee liability | –     | –    | 7 535 944 | 7 535 944 |
|                                                             | –     | –    | 7 535 944 | 7 535 944 |

The redemption of the Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares is secured by Northam Platinum Limited in terms of a financial guarantee.

## 27. Domestic Medium Term Debt Notes

|                                                        | Group   |             | Company |             |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------------|---------|-------------|
|                                                        | 2017    | 2016        | 2017    | 2016        |
|                                                        | R000    | R000        | R000    | R000        |
| Opening balance                                        | 425 000 | 1 370 000   | 425 000 | 1 370 000   |
| Domestic medium term notes repaid                      | –       | (1 370 000) | –       | (1 370 000) |
| Domestic medium term notes issued                      | –       | 175 000     | –       | 175 000     |
| Domestic medium term notes issued                      | –       | 250 000     | –       | 250 000     |
|                                                        | 425 000 | 425 000     | 425 000 | 425 000     |
| Transaction costs relating to the R175.0 million issue | (1 256) | (1 256)     | (1 256) | (1 256)     |
| Amortisation of transaction costs over 60 months       | 292     | 41          | 292     | 41          |
| Transaction costs relating to the R250.0 million issue | (4 627) | (4 627)     | (4 627) | (4 627)     |
| Amortisation of transaction costs over 36 months       | 1 672   | 129         | 1 672   | 129         |
|                                                        | 421 081 | 419 287     | 421 081 | 419 287     |

The following term debt has been raised under the R2.0 billion domestic medium term note programme dated 3 August 2012:

On 11 May 2016, five year notes to the value of R175.0 million were issued under the notes programme. A fixed coupon rate of 13.5%. Interest will be payable on a bi-annual basis in May and November of every year. The funds are used for general corporate purposes.

In addition, on 9 June 2016 a further R250.0 million worth of notes were issued at a floating rate of the 3 month JIBAR plus 390 basis points. Interest is payable on a quarterly basis in August, November, February and May of every year for a three-year period. These funds are used towards partially financing existing and future developments at Booyseendal.

The transaction costs and fees are classified as a transaction cost in terms of IAS 39. Transaction costs are included in the initial measurement of the financial liability and amortised over the period of the financial liability.



# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 28. Preference share liability

|                                                                                                                                                      | Group     |           | Company |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|---------|------|
|                                                                                                                                                      | 2017      | 2016      | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                                                                                                                      | R000      | R000      | R000    | R000 |
| Opening balance                                                                                                                                      | 7 575 697 | 6 656 891 | –       | –    |
| Accrued preference share dividends                                                                                                                   | 1 060 861 | 918 806   | –       | –    |
| Preference shares liability relating to Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited                                                                                | 8 636 558 | 7 575 697 | –       | –    |
| Derecognition of Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares through the investment in the preference shares together with the accrued dividends | (226 976) | –         | –       | –    |
| Liquidity fees amortised over the 10 year lock-in period relating to the Black Economic Empowerment transaction                                      | (129 757) | (146 148) | –       | –    |
|                                                                                                                                                      | 8 279 825 | 7 429 549 | –       | –    |

On 18 May 2015, 159 905 453 cumulative redeemable preference shares were issued by Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited at an issue price of R41 per share. The preference shares are redeemable in 10 years' time at R41 plus the cumulative preference dividends. The preference shareholders are entitled to receive a dividend equal to the issue price multiplied by the dividend rate of prime plus 3.5% calculated on a daily basis based on a 365-day year compounded annually and capitalised at the end of December of every year.

The preference rights, limitations and other terms associated with the Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares are set out in the Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited Memorandum of Incorporation.

The redeemable preference shares do not carry the right to vote.

Subscription undertakings for the full value of the preference shares were secured at a 2.5% liquidity fee. The liquidity fee is classified as a transaction cost in terms of IAS 39. Transaction costs are included in the initial measurement of the financial liability.

The liquidity fees are amortised over the 10-year lock-in period.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 29. Share based payment liability

|                                                                          | Group    |          | Company  |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|                                                                          | 2017     | 2016     | 2017     | 2016     |
|                                                                          | R000     | R000     | R000     | R000     |
| Total share based payment liability                                      | 163 665  | 141 077  | 98 221   | 96 838   |
| Short term portion of share based payment liability                      | (75 026) | (56 704) | (45 988) | (44 197) |
| Long term share based payment liability                                  | 88 639   | 84 373   | 52 233   | 52 641   |
| The movement in the share based payment liability is made up as follows: |          |          |          |          |
| Opening balance                                                          | 141 077  | 130 485  | 96 838   | 108 210  |
| Share based payment expense during the year (note 36)                    | 96 083   | 64 175   | 63 809   | 35 629   |
| Options/incentive shares cash settled during the year                    | (73 495) | (53 583) | (62 426) | (47 001) |
| Total share based payment liability                                      | 163 665  | 141 077  | 98 221   | 96 838   |

The short-term portion is based on the options/shares which will be settled or expire in the next 12 months.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Share option scheme (the scheme)

| Grant date                        | 5 Nov 2009 | 1 July 2010  | 12 Oct 2010 |           |             |
|-----------------------------------|------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| Expiry date                       | 4 Nov 2016 | 30 June 2017 | 11 Oct 2017 | Claw back |             |
| Exercise price in ZAR             | 36.95      | 45.59        | 46.57       | 40.00     | Total       |
| Opening balance 1 July 2016       | 265 000    | –            | 1 795 000   | 80 767    | 2 140 767   |
| Options forfeited during the year | (12 500)   | –            | –           | (497)     | (12 997)    |
| Options exercised during the year | (252 500)  | –            | (1 592 500) | (72 332)  | (1 917 332) |
| July                              | –          | –            | (90 000)    | (3 534)   | (93 534)    |
| August                            | (45 000)   | –            | (25 000)    | (2 746)   | (72 746)    |
| September                         | (182 500)  | –            | (370 000)   | (21 684)  | (574 184)   |
| October                           | –          | –            | (347 500)   | (13 544)  | (361 044)   |
| November                          | (25 000)   | –            | –           | (980)     | (25 980)    |
| December                          | –          | –            | (45 000)    | (1 767)   | (46 767)    |
| January                           | –          | –            | (471 500)   | (18 515)  | (490 015)   |
| February                          | –          | –            | (243 500)   | (9 562)   | (253 062)   |
| March                             | –          | –            | –           | –         | –           |
| April                             | –          | –            | –           | –         | –           |
| May                               | –          | –            | –           | –         | –           |
| June                              | –          | –            | –           | –         | –           |
| Balance as at 30 June 2017        | –          | –            | 202 500     | 7 938     | 210 438     |

| Grant date                        | 27 Nov 2008 | 5 Nov 2009 | 1 July 2010  | 12 Oct 2010 |           |           |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| Expiry date                       | 26 Nov 2015 | 4 Nov 2016 | 30 June 2017 | 11 Oct 2017 | Claw back |           |
| Exercise price in ZAR             | 32.38       | 36.95      | 45.59        | 46.57       | 40.00     | Total     |
| Opening balance 1 July 2015       | 70 000      | 380 000    | 125 000      | 2 050 000   | 102 916   | 2 727 916 |
| Options forfeited during the year | (70 000)    | –          | –            | (255 000)   | (12 740)  | (337 740) |
| Options exercised during the year | –           | (115 000)  | (125 000)    | –           | (9 409)   | (249 409) |
| July                              | –           | –          | –            | –           | –         | –         |
| August                            | –           | (22 500)   | –            | –           | (882)     | (23 382)  |
| September                         | –           | –          | –            | –           | –         | –         |
| October                           | –           | –          | –            | –           | –         | –         |
| November                          | –           | –          | –            | –           | –         | –         |
| December                          | –           | –          | –            | –           | –         | –         |
| January                           | –           | –          | –            | –           | –         | –         |
| February                          | –           | –          | –            | –           | –         | –         |
| March                             | –           | –          | –            | –           | –         | –         |
| April                             | –           | (47 500)   | (125 000)    | –           | (6 763)   | (179 263) |
| May                               | –           | (45 000)   | –            | –           | (1 764)   | (46 764)  |
| June                              | –           | –          | –            | –           | –         | –         |
| Balance as at 30 June 2016        | –           | 265 000    | –            | 1 795 000   | 80 767    | 2 140 767 |

On 6 December 2013, qualifying shareholders were granted the right to subscribe for 3.92086 claw-back shares for every 100 existing shares held on the record date. The claw-back shares were issued at a discount of 2% to the 30-day VWAP and a premium of 5% to the 60-day VWAP, both calculated as at 18 September 2013 which amounted to R40.00. The vesting conditions are the same as the outstanding options to which the claw back options relate to.

Therefore, all outstanding share options held as at the record date were awarded claw back rights options at an exercise price of R40.00 which will expire on the same date as the original option expiry date.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

The following table lists the inputs to the model used for the share option scheme for the year ended 30 June 2017:

| Grant date                             | 12 Oct 2010  |
|----------------------------------------|--------------|
| Dividend yield (%)                     | –            |
| Expected volatility (%)                | 46.60        |
| Risk free interest rate (%)            | 7.51         |
| Expected life of share options (years) | 0.25         |
| Spot price (ZAR)                       | 40.45        |
| Model used*                            | Market value |

*\*Given that the value of the shares will be paid out, and not just the growth in the price, an option valuation model is not appropriate, but the share price at year end adjusted for dividends forfeited during the vesting period was used.*

The following table lists the inputs to the model used for the share option scheme for the year ended 30 June 2016:

| Grant date                             | 5 Nov 2009   | 12 Oct 2010  |
|----------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| Dividend yield (%)                     | –            | –            |
| Expected volatility (%)                | 53.16        | 54.39        |
| Risk free interest rate (%)            | 7.28         | 7.53         |
| Expected life of share options (years) | 0.35         | 0.30         |
| Spot price (ZAR)                       | 43.00        | 43.00        |
| Model used*                            | Market value | Market value |

*\*Given that the value of the shares will be paid out, and not just the growth in the price, an option valuation model is not appropriate, but the share price at year end adjusted for dividends forfeited during the vesting period was used.*

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Share incentive plan (the SIP)

Below is an analysis of share incentives held as at 30 June 2017:

|                                     | 15 Nov 2013<br>Share award | 4 Nov 2014<br>Share award | 11 Nov 2015<br>Share award | 8 Nov 2016<br>Share award | Total     |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------|
| <b>Retention shares</b>             |                            |                           |                            |                           |           |
| Balance 1 July 2016                 | –                          | 600 200                   | 811 800                    | –                         | 1 412 000 |
| Shares awarded during the year      | –                          | –                         | –                          | 550 400                   | 550 400   |
| Shares forfeited                    | –                          | (16 340)                  | (36 660)                   | (22 100)                  | (75 100)  |
| Shares cash settled during the year | –                          | (56 160)                  | (66 040)                   | (19 400)                  | (141 600) |
| Balance at 30 June 2017             | –                          | 527 700                   | 709 100                    | 508 900                   | 1 745 700 |
| Balance 1 July 2015                 | 627 000                    | 718 200                   | –                          | –                         | 1 345 200 |
| Shares awarded during the year      | –                          | –                         | 890 300                    | –                         | 890 300   |
| Shares forfeited                    | (68 000)                   | (54 100)                  | (55 900)                   | –                         | (178 000) |
| Shares cash settled during the year | (559 000)                  | (63 900)                  | (22 600)                   | –                         | (645 500) |
| Balance at 30 June 2016             | –                          | 600 200                   | 811 800                    | –                         | 1 412 000 |

|                                                                          | 6 Nov 2012<br>Share award | 15 Nov 2013<br>Share award | 4 Nov 2014<br>Share award | 11 Nov 2015<br>Share award | 8 Nov 2016<br>Share award | Total       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|
| <b>Performance shares</b>                                                |                           |                            |                           |                            |                           |             |
| Balance 1 July 2016                                                      | –                         | 897 000                    | 1 775 100                 | 2 405 300                  | –                         | 5 077 400   |
| Shares awarded during the year                                           | –                         | –                          | –                         | –                          | 1 626 600                 | 1 626 600   |
| Shares forfeited/adjusted for performance conditions met during the year | –                         | (415 800)                  | (47 840)                  | (108 860)                  | (65 000)                  | (637 500)   |
| Shares cash settled during the year                                      | –                         | (481 200)                  | (166 160)                 | (195 740)                  | (57 000)                  | (900 100)   |
| Balance at 30 June 2017                                                  | –                         | –                          | 1 561 100                 | 2 100 700                  | 1 504 600                 | 5 166 400   |
| Balance 1 July 2015                                                      | 1 129 000                 | 1 091 000                  | 2 124 800                 | –                          | –                         | 4 344 800   |
| Shares awarded during the year                                           | –                         | –                          | –                         | 2 637 600                  | –                         | 2 637 600   |
| Shares forfeited/adjusted for performance conditions met during the year | (17 000)                  | (66 000)                   | (160 700)                 | (165 500)                  | –                         | (409 200)   |
| Shares cash settled during the year                                      | (1 112 000)               | (128 000)                  | (189 000)                 | (66 800)                   | –                         | (1 495 800) |
| Balance at 30 June 2016                                                  | –                         | 897 000                    | 1 775 100                 | 2 405 300                  | –                         | 5 077 400   |

The shares awarded in terms of the rules of the share incentive plan (SIP) comprise: retention shares, which vest after three years from grant date with no performance criteria, and performance shares, which vest after three years from grant date. The final number of performance shares that an employee will receive will be subject to certain performance criteria being met. In November 2014 the JSE and shareholders approved a change to the rules of the SIP in terms of which, from then onwards retention shares also vest after three years.

In March 2013 the JSE approved a change to the rules of the SIP in terms of which, upon the vesting of any awards, participants may elect to receive either the shares that have vested or an amount equal to the volume weighted average price at which Northam shares traded on the day preceding the settlement date.

All awards that had not yet vested but were cash-settled during the year relate to employees who retired.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

The following table lists the inputs to the model used for the share incentive plan for the year ended 30 June 2017:

|                                       | 4 Nov 2014<br>Retention<br>shares | 4 Nov 2014<br>Performance<br>shares | 11 Nov 2015<br>Retention<br>shares | 11 Nov 2015<br>Performance<br>shares | 8 Nov 2016<br>Retention<br>shares | 8 Nov 2016<br>Performance<br>shares |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Dividend yield (%)                    | –                                 | –                                   | –                                  | –                                    | –                                 | –                                   |
| Forfeiture rate (%)                   | 0.9                               | 0.9                                 | 0.9                                | 0.9                                  | 0.9                               | 0.9                                 |
| Expected life of share awards (years) | 0.25                              | 0.35                                | 1.37                               | 1.37                                 | 2.36                              | 2.36                                |
| Spot price (ZAR)                      | 40.45                             | 40.45                               | 40.45                              | 40.45                                | 40.45                             | 40.45                               |
| Model used*                           | Market value                      | Market value                        | Market value                       | Market value                         | Market value                      | Market value                        |

\*Given that the value of the shares will be paid out, and not just the growth in the price, an option valuation model is not appropriate, but the share price at year end adjusted for dividends forfeited during the vesting period was used.

The following table lists the inputs to the model used for the share incentive plan for the year ended 30 June 2016:

|                                       | 6 Nov 2012<br>Performance<br>shares | 4 Nov 2014<br>Retention<br>shares | 4 Nov 2014<br>Performance<br>shares | 11 Nov 2015<br>Retention<br>shares | 11 Nov 2015<br>Performance<br>shares |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Dividend yield (%)                    | –                                   | –                                 | –                                   | –                                  | –                                    |
| Forfeiture rate (%)                   | 0.9                                 | 0.9                               | 0.9                                 | 0.9                                | 0.9                                  |
| Expected life of share awards (years) | 0.38                                | 1.35                              | 1.35                                | 2.37                               | 2.37                                 |
| Spot price (ZAR)                      | 43.00                               | 43.00                             | 43.00                               | 43.00                              | 43.00                                |
| Model used*                           | Market value                        | Market value                      | Market value                        | Market value                       | Market value                         |

\*Given that the value of the shares will be paid out, and not just the growth in the price, an option valuation model is not appropriate, but the share price at year end adjusted for dividends forfeited during the vesting period was used.

The expected life is based on historical data and current expectations and is not necessarily indicative of exercise patterns that may occur.

The expected volatility reflects the assumption that the historical volatility over a period similar to the life of the options/incentive shares is indicative of future trends, which may not necessarily be the actual outcome.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Lock-in and Incentive Mechanism (LIM)

Northam was requested by certain of its key institutional shareholders to consider the creation of a mechanism which would appropriately incentivise Northam's senior management to address the financial risks associated with the guarantee provided by Northam in favour of the Zambezi preference shareholders. A lock-in and incentive mechanism (LIM) which is specifically structured to incentivise the mitigation of those risks introduced by and unique to the guarantee, as well as, retaining key members of Northam's senior management as employees until the redemption of the Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares (preference shares) in May 2025 was approved.

The SIP incentivises Northam's management over the short to medium term (three years) and is primarily focused on motivating the achievement by management of various technical and financial targets. Although these measures are appropriate and essential to the viability of the group, the SIP does not allow for performance measures relating to the guarantee liability. This requires a long-term incentive mechanism premised on the exact variables which will determine the guarantee liability.

It is further recognised that Northam's market position relative to its peers has altered significantly with Northam having become a sizable and respected market participant. This success increases the risk of Northam losing members of its senior management, making it a strategic imperative for the company to retain management and prevent the loss of critical skills before the redemption date. In the circumstances, Northam and the relevant committees of its board of directors have resolved to amend the rules to incorporate the LIM, with a view to appropriately incentivising the management team in order to prevent the guarantee liability from materialising and simultaneously lock-in their skill-set until the redemption date. This objective is consistent with the interests of Northam's shareholders.

The LIM comprises two separate mechanisms structured with specific reference to the terms of the BEE transaction and, more specifically, the potential guarantee liability.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Long-term BEE transaction incentive plan (BIP)

The BIP addresses the long-term incentivisation and retention of its participants by aligning their interests with shareholders through equity participation. The BIP is to be implemented through the SIP, which has been amended to incorporate the specific elements of the BIP. The BIP will be implemented in addition to the SIP and will not replace or affect the SIP.

The company will limit participants in the BIP to the key members of Northam's current and future key executive management team including, the chief executive officer (CEO), chief financial officer (CFO), chief commercial officer (CCO), chief geologist (CG), chief technical officer (CTO), executive officer HR (EHR) and the senior general managers of Booyendal and Zondereinde mines (GM) (participants). The positions of the CG and CTO have not been filled and remain subject to the employment of suitable candidates by the group and the BEE CPS allocated to these positions will not be issued in the event that they are not filled.

In terms of the BIP an aggregate of 5 million shares will be conditionally awarded to the participants through the creation and award of 5 000 000 BEE CPS under the SIP. The CEO has been allocated 1 500 000 BEE CPS, the CFO has been allocated 700 000 BEE CPS, both the CTO and EHR have been allocated 500 000 BEE CPS and each GM have been allocated 200 000 BEE CPS. The shares were valued taking into account a forfeiture rate of 0% and the year-end share price of R40.45 as well as the years to maturity. The aggregate number of BEE CPS issued represents less than 1% of Northam's current issued share capital and may be settled in cash or shares at the election of the independent committee of the board responsible for administering the SIP at that time.

Vesting will be subject to the satisfaction of the performance condition that Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited fully settles the redemption amount; and fully settles or makes adequate provision for all its tax liabilities arising from settlement of the redemption amount, on the basis that no guarantee liability will arise and no member of the group will be required to give any direct or indirect financial assistance for the purposes of or in connection with the settlement of the redemption amount.

Vesting of BEE CPS will occur 30 business days after the date on which the BIP performance condition is fulfilled (which is expected to be 18 May 2025) or, in the event that vesting of the BEE CPS is accelerated in certain exceptional instances, as set out in the current rules in relation to conditional shares, including a change of control of Northam or an earlier date determined in accordance with the rules.

|                                | Group     |      | Company   |      |
|--------------------------------|-----------|------|-----------|------|
|                                | 2017      | 2016 | 2017      | 2016 |
|                                | R000      | R000 | R000      | R000 |
| Opening balance                | –         | –    | –         | –    |
| Shares awarded during the year | 3 600 000 | –    | 3 600 000 | –    |
| Balance as at 30 June 2017     | 3 600 000 | –    | 3 600 000 | –    |

The following table lists the inputs to the model used for the Long-term BEE transaction incentive plan for the year ended 30 June 2017:

|                                       | BEE shares   |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| Dividend yield (%)                    | –            |
| Forfeiture rate (%)                   | –            |
| Expected life of share awards (years) | 7.92         |
| Spot price (ZAR)                      | 40.45        |
| Model used*                           | Market value |

\*Given that the value of the shares will be paid out, and not just the growth in the price, an option valuation model is not appropriate, but the share price at year end adjusted for dividends forfeited during the vesting period was used.



# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 30. Revolving credit facility

|                           | Group |      | Company |      |
|---------------------------|-------|------|---------|------|
|                           | 2017  | 2016 | 2017    | 2016 |
|                           | R000  | R000 | R000    | R000 |
| Revolving credit facility | –     | –    | –       | –    |

The group has a revolving credit facility with Nedbank Limited. The facility is effective from November 2016, to the value of R1.0 billion for the first 18 months after which the facility will increase to R1.5 billion. Commitment fees are payable on the revolving credit facility amounting to 0.99% per annum on the unutilised portion of the facility.

Interest accrues at JIBAR plus 3.30% on any outstanding loan balance.

The facility will expire after a period of 60 months.

## 31. Trade and other payables

|                                                                                                     | Group     |         | Company   |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|
|                                                                                                     | 2017      | 2016    | 2017      | 2016    |
|                                                                                                     | R000      | R000    | R000      | R000    |
| Trade payables                                                                                      | 503 007   | 362 996 | 199 797   | 155 558 |
| Accruals                                                                                            | 367 363   | 302 171 | 334 931   | 237 196 |
| South African Revenue Service – Value added tax                                                     | 11 024    | 13 278  | –         | –       |
| South African Revenue Service – Mineral royalties                                                   | –         | 51      | –         | –       |
| Accrued interest and commitment fees                                                                | 5 741     | 4 782   | 5 741     | 4 782   |
| Accrued interest on the <i>Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden</i> loan | –         | 1 136   | –         | –       |
| Amounts payable to Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited                                         | –         | –       | 476 547   | 363 618 |
| Employee related accruals                                                                           | 193 690   | 142 289 | 157 242   | 111 168 |
| Provisional pricing payables                                                                        | 122 802   | –       | 73 251    | –       |
| Other                                                                                               | 64 545    | 51 232  | 7 354     | 13 036  |
|                                                                                                     | 1 268 172 | 877 935 | 1 254 863 | 885 358 |

Trade payables are unsecured, non-interest bearing and normally settled on 30-day terms. Amounts payable to Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited are mainly attributable to the purchase of concentrate.

The carrying value of trade and other payables approximate their fair value.

Below are the uncovered foreign currency denominated balances as at 30 June included in trade and other payables above:

|                                                               | Group |       | Company |       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------|---------|-------|
|                                                               | 2017  | 2016  | 2017    | 2016  |
|                                                               | €000  | €000  | €000    | €000  |
| Amounts denominated in € included in trade and other payables | 288   | 1 241 | –       | 1 241 |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 32. Short-term provisions

Short-term provisions consist of the provision for leave pay:

|                                                               | Group     |           | Company   |           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                                                               | 2017      | 2016      | 2017      | 2016      |
|                                                               | R000      | R000      | R000      | R000      |
| Balance at the beginning of the year                          | 125 788   | 127 270   | 131 015   | 120 464   |
| Additional amounts raised                                     | 197 246   | 284 088   | 173 831   | 274 664   |
| Provision for leave pay utilised                              | (167 830) | (271 558) | (158 874) | (264 113) |
| Total leave pay provision at the end of the year              | 155 204   | 139 800   | 145 972   | 131 015   |
| Long term portion allocated to long term provisions (note 24) | –         | (14 012)  | –         | (13 215)  |
| Short term portion                                            | 155 204   | 125 788   | 145 972   | 117 800   |

Employee entitlements to annual leave are recognised when they accrue to employees. A provision is made for the estimated liability for annual leave as a result of services rendered by employees up to the financial reporting date based on the basic cost of employment and available leave entitlement at that date.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 33. Other long-term employee benefits

The company entered into an agreement with the representative unions at the Zondereinde mine in terms of which the company has undertaken to contribute 4% of its after tax profits to the Toro Employee Empowerment Trust, providing Northam's Zondereinde mine unskilled and semi-skilled employees an opportunity to participate in the profits of the company. Eligible employees will receive payment at the end of each five-year cycle, starting from September 2013.

|                                                                     | Group   |         | Company |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                     | 2017    | 2016    | 2017    | 2016    |
|                                                                     | R000    | R000    | R000    | R000    |
| Assets at fair market value as at 1 July                            | 112 427 | 97 635  | 112 427 | 97 635  |
| Interest income                                                     | 8 702   | 7 784   | 8 702   | 7 784   |
| Employer contributions                                              | 312     | 10 914  | 312     | 10 914  |
| Benefits paid                                                       | (1 687) | (989)   | (1 687) | (989)   |
| Actuarial loss                                                      | (5 234) | (2 565) | (5 234) | (2 565) |
| Administration costs                                                | (339)   | (352)   | (339)   | (352)   |
| Assets at fair market value as at 30 June                           | 114 181 | 112 427 | 114 181 | 112 427 |
| Unrecognised due to asset ceiling limit*                            | 76 172  | 82 811  | 76 172  | 82 811  |
| Below is a breakdown of other long term employee benefits:          |         |         |         |         |
| Other long term employee benefit as at 1 July                       | 29 616  | 16 579  | 29 616  | 16 579  |
| Service costs                                                       | 12 167  | 10 320  | 12 167  | 10 320  |
| Interest cost                                                       | 3 167   | 1 980   | 3 167   | 1 980   |
| Actuarial (gain)/loss                                               | (4 915) | 2 078   | (4 915) | 2 078   |
| Benefits                                                            | (1 687) | (989)   | (1 687) | (989)   |
| Administration costs                                                | (339)   | (352)   | (339)   | (352)   |
| Other long term employee benefit as at 30 June                      | 38 009  | 29 616  | 38 009  | 29 616  |
| Asset/(liability) recognised on the statement of financial position | –       | –       | –       | –       |

\*The "asset ceiling limit" ensures the asset to be recognised on the company's statement of financial position is subject to the present value of any economic benefits available to the company in the form of refunds or reductions in future contributions.

The company is not entitled to any refund from the fund and hence the economic benefits available to the company are R Nil.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 34. Revenue

|                                               | Group     |           | Company   |           |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                                               | 2017      | 2016      | 2017      | 2016      |
|                                               | R000      | R000      | R000      | R000      |
| Sales revenue (note 35)                       | 6 865 185 | 6 097 070 | 6 395 036 | 5 740 467 |
| Investment revenue (note 37)                  | 167 306   | 265 258   | 126 043   | 109 480   |
| Sundry revenue – dividends received (note 39) | –         | –         | –         | 127 024   |
| Sundry revenue - treatment charges (note 39)  | 18 846    | 42 313    | 18 846    | 42 313    |
|                                               | 7 051 337 | 6 404 641 | 6 539 925 | 6 019 284 |

Sales revenue comprise the turnover of platinum group metals and related precious and base metals, net of value added tax, trade discounts and intra group sales.

## 35. Sales revenue

Sales revenue comprises revenue from the following metals:

|                 | Group     |           | Company   |           |
|-----------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                 | 2017      | 2016      | 2017      | 2016      |
|                 | R000      | R000      | R000      | R000      |
| Platinum        | 3 692 945 | 3 731 417 | 3 692 945 | 3 731 417 |
| Palladium       | 1 316 374 | 1 122 284 | 1 316 374 | 1 122 284 |
| Rhodium         | 453 084   | 442 998   | 453 084   | 442 998   |
| Gold            | 99 322    | 92 151    | 99 322    | 92 151    |
| Chrome          | 925 294   | 354 653   | 455 145   | –         |
| Housing revenue | –         | 1 950     | –         | –         |
| Other           | 378 166   | 351 617   | 378 166   | 351 617   |
|                 | 6 865 185 | 6 097 070 | 6 395 036 | 5 740 467 |

Revenue per metal and per segment:

|           | Zondereinde<br>segment | Booyseindal<br>segment | Intercompany<br>elimination | Total     |
|-----------|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|
|           | 2017                   | 2017                   | 2017                        | 2017      |
|           | R000                   | R000                   | R000                        | R000      |
| Platinum  | 3 692 945              | 1 284 164              | (1 284 164)                 | 3 692 945 |
| Palladium | 1 316 374              | 500 433                | (500 433)                   | 1 316 374 |
| Rhodium   | 453 084                | 189 076                | (189 076)                   | 453 084   |
| Gold      | 99 322                 | 19 328                 | (19 328)                    | 99 322    |
| Chrome    | 455 145                | 470 149                | –                           | 925 294   |
| Other     | 378 166                | 111 292                | (111 292)                   | 378 166   |
|           | 6 395 036              | 2 574 442              | (2 104 293)                 | 6 865 185 |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

|                 | Zondereinde<br>segment* | Booyseindal<br>segment | Intercompany<br>elimination | Other | Total     |
|-----------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-------|-----------|
|                 | 2016                    | 2016                   | 2016                        | 2016  | 2016      |
|                 | R000                    | R000                   | R000                        | R000  | R000      |
| Platinum        | 3 731 417               | 1 250 361              | (1 250 361)                 | –     | 3 731 417 |
| Palladium       | 1 122 284               | 355 758                | (355 758)                   | –     | 1 122 284 |
| Rhodium         | 442 998                 | 146 098                | (146 098)                   | –     | 442 998   |
| Gold            | 92 151                  | 16 976                 | (16 976)                    | –     | 92 151    |
| Chrome          | 225 750                 | 128 903                | –                           | –     | 354 653   |
| Housing revenue | –                       | –                      | –                           | 1 950 | 1 950     |
| Other           | 351 617                 | 74 787                 | (74 787)                    | –     | 351 617   |
|                 | 5 966 217               | 1 972 883              | (1 843 980)                 | 1 950 | 6 097 070 |

\* The Zondereinde segment includes the operations of Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited

Below is a summary of the revenue per region and per segment:

|               | Zondereinde<br>segment | Booyseindal<br>segment | Total     |
|---------------|------------------------|------------------------|-----------|
|               | 2017                   | 2017                   | 2017      |
|               | R000                   | R000                   | R000      |
| Europe        | 2 896 100              | –                      | 2 896 100 |
| Japan         | 1 079 020              | –                      | 1 079 020 |
| North America | 1 088 496              | –                      | 1 088 496 |
| Australia     | 42 303                 | –                      | 42 303    |
| South Africa  | 1 289 117              | 470 149                | 1 759 266 |
|               | 6 395 036              | 470 149                | 6 865 185 |

|               | Zondereinde<br>segment | Booyseindal<br>segment | Other | Total     |
|---------------|------------------------|------------------------|-------|-----------|
|               | 2016                   | 2016                   | 2016  | 2016      |
|               | R000                   | R000                   | R000  | R000      |
| Europe        | 1 842 113              | –                      | –     | 1 842 113 |
| Japan         | 1 163 385              | –                      | –     | 1 163 385 |
| North America | 1 361 323              | –                      | –     | 1 361 323 |
| Australia     | 6 139                  | –                      | –     | 6 139     |
| South Africa  | 1 593 257              | 128 903                | 1 950 | 1 724 110 |
|               | 5 966 217              | 128 903                | 1 950 | 6 097 070 |

The following customers each account for more than 10% of the total sales revenue of the group, either in the current or prior year:

|            | 2017      | 2016      |
|------------|-----------|-----------|
|            | R000      | R000      |
| Customer 1 | 658 404   | 1 170 826 |
| Customer 2 | 1 079 020 | 1 153 243 |
| Customer 3 | 660 461   | 826 262   |
| Customer 4 | 784 459   | 793 239   |
| Customer 5 | 634 894   | 725 989   |
| Customer 6 | 1 391 378 | 186 357   |
| Customer 7 | 925 294   | 354 653   |
|            | 6 133 910 | 5 210 569 |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 36. Operating costs

|                          | Group     |           | Company   |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                          | 2017      | 2016      | 2017      | 2016      |
|                          | R000      | R000      | R000      | R000      |
| Labour                   | 1 906 518 | 1 776 055 | 1 733 561 | 1 614 436 |
| Stores                   | 1 072 836 | 941 567   | 923 642   | 836 821   |
| Utilities                | 703 898   | 638 304   | 564 702   | 512 683   |
| Sundries and contractors | 1 992 765 | 1 649 607 | 495 696   | 457 726   |
| Rehabilitation costs     | –         | 1 700     | –         | 8 568     |
|                          | 5 676 017 | 5 007 233 | 3 717 601 | 3 430 234 |

Below are the operating costs per segment.

|                          | Zondereinde segment | Booyssendal segment | Intercompany | Total     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------|-----------|
|                          | 2017                | 2017                | 2017         | 2017      |
|                          | R000                | R000                | R000         | R000      |
| Labour                   | 1 733 561           | 172 957             | –            | 1 906 518 |
| Stores                   | 923 642             | 149 194             | –            | 1 072 836 |
| Utilities                | 564 702             | 139 196             | –            | 703 898   |
| Sundries and contractors | 495 696             | 1 503 069           | (6 000)      | 1 992 765 |
|                          | 3 717 601           | 1 964 416           | (6 000)      | 5 676 017 |

|                          | Zondereinde segment* | Booyssendal segment | Other | Total     |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-------|-----------|
|                          | 2016                 | 2016                | 2016  | 2016      |
|                          | R000                 | R000                | R000  | R000      |
| Labour                   | 1 618 267            | 157 788             | –     | 1 776 055 |
| Stores                   | 836 821              | 104 746             | –     | 941 567   |
| Utilities                | 515 223              | 123 081             | –     | 638 304   |
| Sundries and contractors | 485 498              | 1 162 294           | 1 815 | 1 649 607 |
| Rehabilitation costs     | 8 568                | (6 868)             | –     | 1 700     |
|                          | 3 464 377            | 1 541 041           | 1 815 | 5 007 233 |

\* The Zondereinde segment includes the operations of Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Labour costs included in operating costs

The aggregate earnings and benefits to employees, including directors, amounted to:

|                                           | Group     |           | Company   |           |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                                           | 2017      | 2016      | 2017      | 2016      |
|                                           | R000      | R000      | R000      | R000      |
| Salaries, wages and other benefits        | 1 608 649 | 1 504 405 | 1 478 292 | 1 381 047 |
| Contributions to retirement benefit funds | 128 674   | 123 964   | 120 002   | 115 853   |
| Contributions to health care funds        | 73 112    | 68 831    | 71 458    | 67 227    |
| Share based payment expense (Note 29)     | 96 083    | 64 175    | 63 809    | 35 629    |
| Employee empowerment scheme               | –         | 10 914    | –         | 10 914    |
|                                           | 1 906 518 | 1 772 289 | 1 733 561 | 1 610 670 |
| Fees paid to non-executive directors      | 4 216     | 3 766     | 4 216     | 3 766     |
|                                           | 1 910 734 | 1 776 055 | 1 737 777 | 1 614 436 |

Key management compensation is disclosed in the related party note (note 47).

## 37. Investment revenue

Investment revenue consists of the following:

|                                                                           | Group   |         | Company |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                           | 2017    | 2016    | 2017    | 2016    |
|                                                                           | R000    | R000    | R000    | R000    |
| Interest received on cash and cash equivalents                            | 96 847  | 193 663 | 77 277  | 29 801  |
| Dividend income received from short term investments                      | 47 942  | 2 649   | 18 094  | 1 018   |
| Interest and liquidation dividends received from subsidiaries             | –       | –       | 3 891   | 27 223  |
| Interest received on instalment sales agreements                          | 9 768   | 10 201  | –       | –       |
| Interest received relating to the Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund | 8 586   | 6 087   | 5 070   | 2 794   |
| Interest received relating to the Buttonshope Conservancy Trust           | 686     | 755     | –       | –       |
| Interest from insurance contingency fund                                  | –       | 47 808  | –       | –       |
| Accrued dividends from Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited                      | –       | –       | 19 205  | –       |
| Deemed interest on the interest free home loans                           | 456     | –       | 370     | –       |
| Interest received from the South African Revenue Service                  | 3 017   | 3 104   | 2 134   | –       |
| Other financial instruments                                               | 4       | 991     | 2       | 48 644  |
|                                                                           | 167 306 | 265 258 | 126 043 | 109 480 |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 38. Finance costs excluding preference share dividends

Finance costs consists of the following:

|                                                                                                         | Group    |          | Company  |          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|                                                                                                         | 2017     | 2016     | 2017     | 2016     |
|                                                                                                         | R000     | R000     | R000     | R000     |
| Finance costs relating to the domestic medium term debt notes                                           | (51 797) | (28 283) | (51 797) | (28 283) |
| Amounts capitalised in terms of IAS23 Borrowing costs                                                   | 51 797   | –        | 23 625   | –        |
| Commitment fees and borrowing facilities                                                                | (7 435)  | (5 014)  | (7 435)  | (5 014)  |
| Interest on the loan from the <i>Nederlandse Financierings Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV</i> | (3 402)  | (4 447)  | –        | –        |
| Amortisation of the transaction costs relating to the domestic medium term debt notes                   | (1 794)  | (170)    | (1 794)  | (170)    |
| Amortisation of the transaction costs relating to the revolving credit facility                         | (1 003)  | –        | (1 003)  | –        |
| Unwinding of rehabilitation liability                                                                   | (41 491) | –        | (21 004) | –        |
| Unwinding of research and development liability                                                         | (7 990)  | –        | (7 990)  | –        |
| Other financial instruments                                                                             | (8 070)  | (1 720)  | (5 114)  | (48)     |
|                                                                                                         | (71 185) | (39 634) | (72 512) | (33 515) |

## 39. Sundry income

|                                                                        | Group  |         | Company |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                        | 2017   | 2016    | 2017    | 2016    |
|                                                                        | R000   | R000    | R000    | R000    |
| Dividends received                                                     | –      | –       | –       | 127 024 |
| Treatment charges in respect of concentrate purchased                  | 18 846 | 42 313  | 18 846  | 42 313  |
| Rent received                                                          | 6 647  | 5 981   | 4 516   | 5 950   |
| Sale of scrap                                                          | 5 652  | 4 677   | 3 407   | 3 041   |
| Insurance claim/refund                                                 | –      | 59 595  | –       | 59 030  |
| Profit on sale of property, plant and equipment                        | 1 762  | 57      | 1 762   | 57      |
| Profit on sale of Trans Hex Group Limited shares                       | –      | –       | –       | 14 210  |
| Write back of impairment of Trans Hex Group Limited shares             | –      | 34 122  | –       | –       |
| Accommodation and housing income                                       | 11 286 | –       | 2 895   | –       |
| Business rescue proceeds from Valditime Proprietary Limited settlement | 7 654  | –       | 7 654   | –       |
| Write back of impairment of Pandora joint venture                      | –      | –       | 7 879   | –       |
| Environmental guarantee investment income                              | 7 759  | 2 223   | 5 320   | 2 050   |
| Management fees received from associate                                | 2 644  | –       | –       | –       |
| Other                                                                  | 11 111 | 5 797   | 11 954  | 2 707   |
|                                                                        | 73 361 | 154 765 | 64 233  | 256 382 |



# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 40. Sundry expenditure

|                                                                     | Group     |          | Company  |          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|
|                                                                     | 2017      | 2016     | 2017     | 2016     |
|                                                                     | R000      | R000     | R000     | R000     |
| Amortisation of participation interest in the Pandora joint venture | –         | (2 600)  | –        | (2 600)  |
| Impairment of investments in associates                             | –         | (20 512) | –        | (20 512) |
| Corporate action costs and once-off project costs                   | (56 541)  | (7 756)  | (55 570) | (7 756)  |
| Booyssendal land management                                         | (5 452)   | (3 324)  | –        | –        |
| Booyssendal South care and maintenance                              | (23 983)  | (28 084) | –        | –        |
| Eland care and maintenance                                          | (11 982)  | –        | –        | –        |
| Loss on sale of investment in Trans Hex Group Limited               | –         | (21 024) | –        | –        |
| Accommodation and housing expenses                                  | (14 551)  | –        | (2 900)  | –        |
| Black Economic Empowerment Trust operating costs                    | (8 546)   | –        | –        | –        |
| Donation to the Northam Employee Trust                              | –         | –        | (1 000)  | (1 000)  |
| Administrative costs relating to Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited      | (552)     | (3 076)  | (552)    | (3 076)  |
| Other expenditure                                                   | (9 236)   | (5 746)  | (565)    | (2 145)  |
|                                                                     | (130 843) | (92 122) | (60 587) | (37 089) |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 41. Taxation

|                                                                                                                                                                           | Group   |         | Company |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 2017    | 2016    | 2017    | 2016    |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | R000    | R000    | R000    | R000    |
| <i>Current income tax</i>                                                                                                                                                 |         |         |         |         |
| Current income tax charge                                                                                                                                                 | 70 327  | 148 505 | 63 204  | 49 035  |
| Adjustment in respect of current income tax of previous years                                                                                                             | (219)   | (7 680) | –       | (7 748) |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 70 108  | 140 825 | 63 204  | 41 287  |
| <i>Deferred tax</i>                                                                                                                                                       |         |         |         |         |
| Relating to origination and reversal of temporary differences                                                                                                             | 139 578 | 96 069  | 9 741   | 67 701  |
| Other                                                                                                                                                                     | 2 335   | –       | 120     | –       |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 141 913 | 96 069  | 9 861   | 67 701  |
| Income tax expense reported in profit or loss                                                                                                                             | 212 021 | 236 894 | 73 065  | 108 988 |
| Taxation comprises:                                                                                                                                                       |         |         |         |         |
| Non mining tax                                                                                                                                                            | 70 327  | 148 313 | 63 204  | 48 843  |
| Adjustment in respect of prior years                                                                                                                                      | (219)   | (7 680) | –       | (7 748) |
| Deferred tax                                                                                                                                                              | 141 913 | 96 069  | 9 861   | 67 701  |
| Capital gains tax                                                                                                                                                         | –       | 192     | –       | 192     |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 212 021 | 236 894 | 73 065  | 108 988 |
| A reconciliation of the standard rate of South African tax compared with that charged in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income is set out below: | %       | %       | %       | %       |
| South African normal tax                                                                                                                                                  | 28.0    | 28.0    | 28.0    | 28.0    |
| Adjustments in respect of prior years normal and deferred tax                                                                                                             | (7.8)   | (2.8)   | 3.8     | (2.1)   |
| Dividend income received                                                                                                                                                  | –       | –       | –       | 9.3     |
| Tax on capital contributions from third party                                                                                                                             | –       | (5.8)   | –       | (4.2)   |
| Impairment of investment in joint venture                                                                                                                                 | –       | (2.1)   | –       | (1.5)   |
| Exempt income received                                                                                                                                                    | 5.2     | (3.1)   | (7.1)   | –       |
| Expenditure incurred which is not deductible                                                                                                                              | (7.0)   | (4.0)   | 3.7     | (0.2)   |
| Corporate action costs                                                                                                                                                    | –       | (0.8)   | –       | (0.6)   |
| Amortisation of liquidity fees paid on preference shares                                                                                                                  | (1.2)   | (1.9)   | –       | –       |
| Preference share dividends disallowable                                                                                                                                   | (67.2)  | (94.8)  | –       | –       |
| Capital gains tax                                                                                                                                                         | –       | –       | –       | (0.1)   |
| Effective tax rate                                                                                                                                                        | (50.0)  | (87.3)  | 28.4    | 28.6    |

The current rate of mining tax applicable to the company is 28% (2016: 28%). Non mining income is subject to a rate of 28% (2016: 28%). Deferred tax is provided at the statutory rate of 28% for all temporary differences. Dividend withholding tax is levied at 20% (2016: 15%) for local shareholders, who are not companies.

Capital gains tax at an effective rate of 22.4% (2016: 22.4%) is payable on any gains realised on the disposal of investments or mining properties.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 42. Loss and dividend per share

Basic loss per share amounts are calculated by dividing the loss for the year attributable to ordinary equity holders of the parent by the weighted average number of ordinary shares outstanding during the year. Headline loss per share is based on the headline loss and is reconciled to loss attributable to shareholders as follows:

|                                                              | Group     |           | Company |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|---------|------|
|                                                              | 2017      | 2016      | 2017    | 2016 |
|                                                              | R000      | R000      | R000    | R000 |
| Loss attributable to shareholders                            | (635 943) | (508 263) |         |      |
| Profit on the sale of property, plant and equipment          | (1 762)   | (57)      |         |      |
| Taxation impact                                              | 493       | 16        |         |      |
| Impairment of associate's assets                             | –         | 11 185    |         |      |
| Taxation impact                                              | –         | (3 132)   |         |      |
| Loss on sale of investment in associate                      | –         | 21 024    |         |      |
| Taxation impact                                              | –         | –         |         |      |
| IFRS 5 adjustment to fair value less cost to sell            | 841       | –         |         |      |
| Taxation impact                                              | –         | –         |         |      |
| Reversal of impairment of investments and receivable balance | –         | (13 610)  |         |      |
| Taxation impact                                              | –         | –         |         |      |
| Headline loss                                                | (636 371) | (492 837) |         |      |

Fully diluted earnings per share amounts are calculated by dividing the loss attributable to ordinary equity holders by the weighted average number of ordinary shares outstanding during the year plus the weighted average number of ordinary shares that would be issued on the conversion of all the dilutive potential ordinary shares into ordinary shares.

Fully diluted headline loss per share are based on the headline loss and the average number of potential diluted shares in issue.

|                             |   |   |   |   |
|-----------------------------|---|---|---|---|
| Dividends per share (cents) | – | – | – | – |
|-----------------------------|---|---|---|---|

The weighted average number of ordinary shares in issue outside the group for the purpose of calculating the loss per share and the weighted average number of ordinary shares for diluted earnings per share are calculated as the number of shares in issue less the treasury shares held:

|                                                                |             |             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Average number of ordinary shares in issue during the year     | 349 875 759 | 349 875 759 |
| Average number of potentially diluted ordinary shares in issue | 349 875 759 | 349 875 759 |
| Number of shares in issue                                      | 509 781 212 | 509 781 212 |
| Treasury shares in issue                                       | 159 905 453 | 159 905 453 |
| Shares in issue adjusted for treasury shares                   | 349 875 759 | 349 875 759 |
| Loss per share in cents                                        | (181.8)     | (145.3)     |
| Fully diluted loss per share in cents                          | (181.8)     | (145.3)     |
| Headline loss per share in cents                               | (181.9)     | (140.9)     |
| Fully diluted headline loss per share in cents                 | (181.9)     | (140.9)     |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 43. Cash generated from operations

|                                                                     | Group     |           | Company   |           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                                                                     | 2017      | 2016      | 2017      | 2016      |
|                                                                     | R000      | R000      | R000      | R000      |
| (Loss)/profit before taxation                                       | (423 922) | (271 369) | 257 075   | 381 606   |
| Adjusted for non-cash items:                                        |           |           |           |           |
| Profit on sale of property, plant and equipment                     | (1 762)   | (57)      | (1 762)   | (57)      |
| Depreciation and write offs                                         | 452 584   | 403 545   | 182 650   | 187 966   |
| Changes in long term provisions                                     | 4 530     | 51 703    | (5 821)   | 24 807    |
| Changes in long term receivables                                    | 5 972     | 4 786     | –         | –         |
| Changes in short term provisions                                    | 15 404    | (1 482)   | 14 957    | (2 664)   |
| Share of (earnings)/losses from associates                          | (4 870)   | 32 253    | –         | –         |
| Amortisation of participation interest in the Pandora joint venture | –         | 2 600     | –         | 2 600     |
| Loss/(profit) on sale of investment in associates                   | –         | 21 024    | –         | (14 210)  |
| Finance charges on preference shares                                | 1 017 396 | 918 806   | –         | –         |
| Liquidity fees on the preference shares                             | 16 390    | 18 088    | –         | –         |
| Loss on derecognition of preference share liability                 | 901       | –         | –         | –         |
| Reversal of impairment of investment in associates                  | –         | (13 610)  | –         | 20 512    |
| IFRS 5 adjustment to fair value less costs to sell                  | 841       | –         | (7 879)   | –         |
| Net foreign exchange movement                                       | 46 729    | –         | 32 564    | –         |
| Other                                                               | (1 521)   | 1 395     | (5 717)   | –         |
| Movement in share based payment liability                           | 22 588    | 10 592    | 1 383     | (11 372)  |
| Finance charges excluding preference share dividends                | 71 185    | 39 634    | 72 512    | 33 515    |
| Investment revenue                                                  | (167 306) | (265 258) | (106 838) | (109 480) |
| Dividends received                                                  | –         | –         | –         | (127 024) |
|                                                                     | 1 055 139 | 952 650   | 433 124   | 386 199   |

## 44. Change in working capital

|                             | Group     |           | Company   |           |
|-----------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|                             | 2017      | 2016      | 2017      | 2016      |
|                             | R000      | R000      | R000      | R000      |
| Inventories                 | (398 832) | (203 720) | (364 744) | (262 903) |
| Trade and other receivables | (173 793) | 123 650   | (213 603) | 7 144     |
| Trade and other payables    | 390 237   | (82 061)  | 369 505   | 200 055   |
|                             | (182 388) | (162 131) | (208 842) | (55 704)  |

## 45. Taxation paid

|                                            | Group    |          | Company  |          |
|--------------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|                                            | 2017     | 2016     | 2017     | 2016     |
|                                            | R000     | R000     | R000     | R000     |
| Balance owing at the beginning of the year | 46 847   | 81 377   | (45 716) | (11 624) |
| Profit or loss charge                      | 70 108   | 140 825  | 63 204   | 41 287   |
| Balance owing at the end of the year       | (64 177) | (46 847) | 37 923   | 45 716   |
|                                            | 52 778   | 175 355  | 55 411   | 75 379   |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 46. Financial risk management objectives and policies

The group's activities are exposed to a variety of financial risks, market risk (including currency risk, interest rate risk and price risks), credit risk and liquidity risks. The group's overall risk management programme focuses on the unpredictability of financial markets and seeks to minimise potential adverse effects on the group's financial performance.

Financial risk management is carried out by the finance department. Policies are approved by the board of directors, which sets guidelines to identify, evaluate and hedge financial risks in cooperation with the operating units.

The group's principal financial liabilities comprise loans and borrowings including preference shares, trade and other payables, and a financial guarantee contract (in the case of company only). The main purpose of these financial liabilities is to finance the group's operations and to provide guarantees to support its operations. The group has various financial assets such as trade receivables, investments, long-term receivables and cash and cash equivalents, which arise directly from its operations.

The group may enter into derivative transactions, being forward currency contracts or metal hedging contracts. The purpose is to manage the currency risks arising from the group's operations and its sources of finance. The main risks arising from the group's financial instruments are interest rate risk, liquidity risk, foreign currency risk, commodity price risk and credit risk. The board of directors reviews and agrees policies for managing each of these risks which are summarised below:

### Market risk

Market risk is the risk that fair value of future cash flows of a financial instrument will fluctuate because of changes in market prices. Market prices comprise the following types of risk: interest rate risk, foreign currency risk, commodity price risk and other price risk, such as equity risk.

### Foreign currency risk

The group operates on international commodity markets and is therefore exposed to foreign exchange risk primarily with respect to the US dollar. Foreign exchange risks arises from future commercial transactions and are recognised both in financial assets and liabilities. To manage foreign exchange risks arising from future commercial transactions, the group, from time to time, may use forward exchange contracts within board-approval limits.

Foreign currency risk is the risk that the fair value or future cash flows of a financial instrument will fluctuate because of changes in foreign exchange rate. The group has transactional currency exposures. Such exposure arises from sales in currencies other than the unit's functional currency. The majority of the group's sales are denominated in currencies other than functional currency of the operating unit making the sale, whilst 96% of costs are denominated in the unit's functional currency, the South African rand.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

The following table demonstrates the sensitivity to a possible change in exchange rates with all other variables held constant, of the group's profit before tax due to changes in the fair value of monetary assets and liabilities, with a debit to profit or loss being disclosed in brackets.

|                                                                                                                                         | Group    |          | Company  |          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|                                                                                                                                         | 2017     | 2016     | 2017     | 2016     |
|                                                                                                                                         | R000     | R000     | R000     | R000     |
| Weakening by 10% of USD                                                                                                                 | 63 884   | 63 213   | 63 884   | 63 213   |
| Strengthening by 10% of USD                                                                                                             | (63 884) | (63 213) | (63 884) | (63 213) |
| Weakening by 10% of €                                                                                                                   | (15 350) | (18 352) | (14 920) | (18 352) |
| Strengthening by 10% of €                                                                                                               | 15 350   | 18 352   | 14 920   | 18 352   |
| At year end the foreign currency value of items under their respective statement of financial position classifications were as follows: |          |          |          |          |
| Accounts receivable: USD                                                                                                                | 13 279   | 6 351    | 13 279   | 6 351    |
| Cash and cash equivalents: USD                                                                                                          | 35 655   | 36 636   | 35 655   | 36 636   |
| Accounts payable: €                                                                                                                     | (288)    | (1 241)  | –        | (1 241)  |
| Long term loans: €                                                                                                                      | (10 000) | (10 000) | (10 000) | (10 000) |
| Exchange rates at year end                                                                                                              |          |          |          |          |
| ZAR/USD                                                                                                                                 | 13.06    | 14.71    | 13.06    | 14.71    |
| ZAR/€                                                                                                                                   | 14.92    | 16.33    | 14.92    | 16.33    |

## Commodity price risk

The group is subject to commodity price risks as a result of the prices at which it sells its products being determined by reference to international commodity exchanges. PGMs are sold to third party clients, with prices being fixed based on contractual terms relating to the month in which the product was sold. Trade receivables relating to PGM debtors settle the outstanding receivable balance between 2 – 5 days.

For nickel, copper and chrome receivables, there is a commodity price risk that is retained. The following is an indication of the effect that changes in the nickel, copper and chrome prices would have on the profit before tax, based on the outstanding accounts receivable balance at year-end:

|                                                                                              | Group    |         | Company  |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|----------|---------|
|                                                                                              | 2017     | 2016    | 2017     | 2016    |
|                                                                                              | R000     | R000    | R000     | R000    |
| Weakening by 10% of the respective commodity prices                                          | 516      | 3 201   | 3 472    | 3 201   |
| Strengthening by 10% of the respective commodity prices                                      | (516)    | (3 201) | (3 472)  | (3 201) |
| At year end the balances outstanding relating to provisional prices receivables amounted to: |          |         |          |         |
| Nickel receivable                                                                            | 30 398   | 29 328  | 30 398   | 29 328  |
| Copper receivable                                                                            | 3 749    | 2 292   | 3 749    | 2 292   |
| Chrome receivable                                                                            | 35 593   | –       | 15 595   | –       |
| Chrome payable                                                                               | (64 576) | –       | (15 025) | –       |

The group did not enter into any commodity hedging contracts during the year.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Credit risk

Credit risk is the risk that a counterparty will not meet its obligation under a financial instrument or customer contract, leading to a financial loss. The group is exposed to credit risk from its operating activities with banks and financial institutions. The group trades only with recognised, creditworthy third parties. It is the group's policy that all customers who wish to trade on credit terms are subject to credit verification procedures. In addition, receivable balances are monitored on an ongoing basis with the result that the group's exposure to bad debts is not significant.

With respect to credit risk arising from other financial assets of the group, which comprise cash and cash equivalents, investments and loans, the group's exposure to credit risk arises from default of the counterparty, with a maximum exposure equal to the carrying amount of these instruments.

There is no material concentration of credit risk in cash and cash equivalents, trade and other receivables and loans. The group has policies that limit the amount of credit exposure related to cash and cash equivalents to any single financial institution by only dealing with well-established financial institutions of high credit quality standing. The credit exposure to any one of the counterparties is managed by setting exposure limits which are approved by the board.

With regard to trade and other receivables, the group has policies in place to ensure that sales are only made to customers with an appropriate credit history. Trade debtors comprise a number of customers, dispersed across different geographical areas. Credit evaluations are performed on the financial conditions of these and other receivables from time to time. Trade receivables are presented in the statement of financial position net of any provision for impairment.

Credit risk relating to loans mainly consists of employee housing loans (note 19). These loans are secured by a second bond over residential properties.

## Interest rate risk

Interest rate risk is the risk that the fair value or future cash flows of a financial instrument will fluctuate because of the changes in market interest rate. The group's exposure to risk of changes in market interest rates relates primarily to the group's cash balances, preference shares and DMTN's with floating interest rates and the long-term loan.

As part of the process of managing the group's interest rate risk, all borrowing and the refinancing of existing borrowings are positioned according to expected movements in interest rates.

The following table demonstrates the sensitivity to a reasonable possible change in interest rates, with all other variables held constant, of the group's profit before tax (through the impact on floating rate borrowings and cash and cash equivalents). There is no impact on the group's equity.

|                           | Group    |          | Company  |          |
|---------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|                           | 2017     | 2016     | 2017     | 2016     |
|                           | R000     | R000     | R000     | R000     |
| Cash and cash equivalents |          |          |          |          |
| Increase of 1%            | 17 867   | 31 051   | 13 967   | 16 544   |
| Decrease of 1%            | (17 867) | (31 051) | (13 967) | (16 544) |
| Floating rate borrowings  |          |          |          |          |
| Increase of 1%            | (87 009) | (78 888) | (4 211)  | (4 193)  |
| Decrease of 1%            | 87 009   | 78 888   | 4 211    | 4 193    |

The group monitors its exposure to fluctuating interest rates. Cash and cash equivalents are primarily invested with short-term maturity dates, which exposes the group to cash flow interest rate risks.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Fair value

The fair value of financial instruments is defined as the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction in the principal (or most advantageous) market at the measurement date under current market conditions (i.e. an exit price) regardless of whether that price is directly observable or estimated using other valuation techniques.

The fair values have been determined using available market information and appropriate valuation methodologies.

Management applies the established fair value hierarchy that categorises the inputs into valuation techniques used to measure fair value into three levels:

Level 1 – quoted (unadjusted) prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.

Level 2 – a technique where all inputs that have an impact on the value are observable, either directly or indirectly.

Level 3 – a technique where all inputs that have an impact on the value are no observable.

The following assets and liabilities are measured at fair value:

|                                  | Carrying<br>amount | Fair value | Carrying<br>amount | Fair value |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|------------|--------------------|------------|
|                                  | 2017               | 2017       | 2016               | 2016       |
|                                  | R000               | R000       | R000               | R000       |
| Non-current assets held for sale | 49 222             | 49 222     | –                  | –          |

The non-current asset held for sale is classified within level 3 of the fair value hierarchy. For further information on this classification, refer to note 6. The fair value was determined based on the sales value as per the signed agreement plus the arrangement to reimburse all cash calls. As at 30 June 2017, the amount is considered to be fully recoverable and the carrying value therefore equals the fair value.

With regards to financial instruments the carrying amount of financial assets and financial liabilities approximate their fair value with the exception of the following:

|                                            | Carrying<br>amount | Fair value  | Carrying<br>amount | Fair value  |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|-------------|
|                                            | 2017               | 2017        | 2016               | 2016        |
|                                            | R000               | R000        | R000               | R000        |
| Financial guarantee (company results)      | (7 535 944)        | (1 941 405) | (7 535 944)        | (770 976)   |
| Preference share liability (group results) | (8 279 825)        | (8 540 309) | (7 429 549)        | (7 035 839) |

The preference share liability is classified as level 1, whereas the financial guarantee is determined as level 2 using the fair value of the Northam shares are compared to the preference share liability.



# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Liquidity risk

Prudent liquidity risk management implies maintaining sufficient cash and cash equivalents and the availability of funding through an adequate amount of committed credit facilities. The group has undrawn general banking facilities which were not drawn at year end (No amounts drawn as at 30 June 2016).

The group's treasury operations are managed by a reputable treasury management institution.

They assist the group in monitoring its risk to a shortage of funds by only depositing its surplus cash funds with major banks of high credit standing. They consider and monitor the maturity and returns of all financial investments. Management performs regular projected cash flow forecasts for the group.

The group has the following secured loans at the financial reporting date:

Under the domestic medium term note programme (dated 3 August 2012), notes were issued on 11 May 2016 to the value of R175.0 million at a fixed coupon rate of 13.5% for a five-year period. Interest is payable on a bi-annual basis in May and November of every year. In addition, on 9 June 2016, a further R250.0 million notes were issued at a floating rate of the 3 month JIBAR plus 390 basis points. Interest is payable on a quarterly basis in August, November, February and May of every year for a three-year period.

The group has a revolving credit facility with Nedbank Limited. The facility is effective from November 2016, to the value of R1.0 billion for the first 18 months after which the facility will increase to R1.5 billion. Commitment fees are payable on the revolving credit facility amounting to 0.99% per annum on the unutilised portion of the facility. Interest accrues at JIBAR plus 3.30% on any outstanding loan balance. The facility will expire after a period of 60 months.

Previously the group had entered into a facility agreement with Nedbank Limited in August 2011 regarding a R1.0 billion five-year senior unsecured revolving credit facility (the facility). The facility is available to be utilised by way of periodic drawdown requests until the earlier of 1 month prior to final maturity and cancellation of the agreement. Interest is calculated at JIBAR plus 2.80% for each applicable interest period. At year-end, no amount of the Nedbank facility was utilised. .

Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited issued 159 905 453 preference shares at R41 per share on 18 May 2015 in terms of the BEE transaction. These preference shares are repayable in 10 years' time, and accrue cumulative variable dividends at 3.5% over the prime overdraft rate in South Africa.

Management regularly monitors rolling forecasts of the liquidity reserve comprising undrawn borrowing facilities and cash and cash equivalents on the basis of expected cash flows.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

The maturity profile of the group's financial liabilities is set out below, into the relevant maturity groupings based on the remaining period at the reporting date to the contractual maturity date representing the undiscounted contractual cash flows:

|                                                    | Payable on demand | 1 – 6 months | More than 6 months | More than a year | Total      |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------------|------------------|------------|
|                                                    | 2017              | 2017         | 2017               | 2017             | 2017       |
| Group                                              | R000              | R000         | R000               | R000             | R000       |
| Trade payables                                     | 503 007           | –            | –                  | –                | 503 007    |
| Accrued interest on the domestic medium term notes | –                 | 5 741        | –                  | –                | 5 741      |
| Accruals                                           | –                 | 367 363      | –                  | –                | 367 363    |
| Employee related accruals                          | –                 | 193 690      | –                  | –                | 193 690    |
| Provisional pricing payables                       | –                 | 122 802      | –                  | –                | 122 802    |
| Other                                              | –                 | –            | –                  | 64 545           | 64 545     |
| Long term loans                                    | –                 | 149 168      | 9 400              | 159 800          | 318 368    |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                    | –                 | 25 825       | 25 825             | 523 900          | 575 550    |
| Preference share liability*                        | –                 | –            | –                  | 23 951 323       | 23 951 323 |
|                                                    | 503 007           | 864 589      | 35 225             | 24 699 568       | 26 102 389 |

\* The undiscounted cash flows relating to the preference share liability is also the maximum exposure to credit risk regarding the guarantee issued by Northam company.

|                                                                                                  | Payable on demand | 1 – 6 months | More than 6 months | More than a year | Total      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------------|------------------|------------|
|                                                                                                  | 2016              | 2016         | 2016               | 2016             | 2016       |
| Group                                                                                            | R000              | R000         | R000               | R000             | R000       |
| Trade payables                                                                                   | 362 996           | –            | –                  | –                | 362 996    |
| Accrued interest on the domestic medium term notes                                               | –                 | 4 782        | –                  | –                | 4 782      |
| Accrued interest on the Nederlandse Financiering's Maatschappij voor Ontwikkelingslanden NV loan | –                 | 1 136        | –                  | –                | 1 136      |
| Accruals                                                                                         | –                 | 302 171      | –                  | –                | 302 171    |
| Employee related accruals                                                                        | –                 | 142 289      | –                  | –                | 142 289    |
| Other                                                                                            | –                 | –            | –                  | 51 232           | 51 232     |
| Long term loans                                                                                  | –                 | 13 584       | 4 064              | 235 464          | 253 112    |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                                                                  | –                 | 25 825       | 25 825             | 575 550          | 627 200    |
| Preference share liability*                                                                      | –                 | –            | –                  | 24 575 615       | 24 575 615 |
|                                                                                                  | 362 996           | 489 787      | 29 889             | 25 437 861       | 26 320 533 |

\* The undiscounted cash flows relating to the preference share liability is also the maximum exposure to credit risk regarding the guarantee issued by Northam company.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

|                                                             | Payable on demand | 1 – 6 months | More than 6 months | More than a year | Total     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------|
|                                                             | 2017              | 2017         | 2017               | 2017             | 2017      |
| Company                                                     | R000              | R000         | R000               | R000             | R000      |
| Trade payables                                              | 199 797           | –            | –                  | –                | 199 797   |
| Accrued interest on the domestic medium term notes          | –                 | 5 741        | –                  | –                | 5 741     |
| Accruals                                                    | –                 | 334 931      | –                  | –                | 334 931   |
| Amounts payable to Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited | –                 | 476 547      | –                  | –                | 476 547   |
| Employee related accruals                                   | –                 | 157 242      | –                  | –                | 157 242   |
| Provisional pricing payables                                | –                 | 73 251       | –                  | –                | 73 251    |
| Other                                                       | –                 | 7 354        | –                  | –                | 7 354     |
| Long term loans                                             | –                 | 149 168      | 9 400              | 159 800          | 318 368   |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                             | –                 | 25 825       | 25 825             | 523 900          | 575 550   |
|                                                             | 199 797           | 1 230 059    | 35 225             | 683 700          | 2 148 781 |

|                                                             | Payable on demand | 1 – 6 months | More than 6 months | More than a year | Total     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------|
|                                                             | 2016              | 2016         | 2016               | 2016             | 2016      |
| Company                                                     | R000              | R000         | R000               | R000             | R000      |
| Trade payables                                              | 155 558           | –            | –                  | –                | 155 558   |
| Accrued interest on the domestic medium term notes          | –                 | 4 782        | –                  | –                | 4 782     |
| Accruals                                                    | –                 | 237 196      | –                  | –                | 237 196   |
| Amounts payable to Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited | –                 | 363 618      | –                  | –                | 363 618   |
| Employee related accruals                                   | –                 | 111 168      | –                  | –                | 111 168   |
| Other                                                       | –                 | –            | –                  | 13 036           | 13 036    |
| Long term loans                                             | –                 | 9 400        | –                  | 178 600          | 188 000   |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                             | –                 | 25 825       | 25 825             | 575 550          | 627 200   |
|                                                             | 155 558           | 751 989      | 25 825             | 767 186          | 1 700 558 |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Capital management (including equity risk)

The primary objective of the group's capital management is to ensure that it maintains a strong credit rating and healthy capital ratios in order to support its business and maximise shareholder value. In addition, capital management objectives include the group's ability to continue as a going concern, in order to provide returns for shareholders and benefits to other stakeholders while maintaining an optimal capital structure to reduce the cost of capital.

The group manages its capital structure (which consists of equity) and makes adjustments to it, in light of changes in economic conditions. To maintain or adjust the capital structure, the group may adjust the dividend payment to shareholders, return capital to shareholders or issue new shares.

It is important to note that the groups BEE partner, Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited own 31.4% of the issued capital of Northam Platinum Limited. Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited's prospects are however limited in nature in that they are dependent on the prospects of the Northam Platinum Limited share price and the returns attributable to the preference shares are constant and fluctuate only in accordance with prevailing interest rates. Various characteristics of the preference shares, such as the Northam Guarantee and redemption payment structure, provide the holders of the Zambezi preference shares with additional security regarding the recoverability of their dividends and capital.

The preference shareholders retain equity risk as a result of the redemption being ultimately underpinned by the value of Northam Platinum Limited share performance and/or Northam Platinum Limited's ability to continue as a going concern. The preference shares therefore present their holders with a combination of the risks and rewards associated with equity and debt instruments.

Northam Platinum Limited's prospects for growth and continued profitability are subject to various external and internal factors which cannot be accurately predicted, forecasted or controlled by Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited as an investor in Northam Platinum Limited.

The redemption of the preference shares is planned to occur through cash accumulation from dividends received from Northam Platinum Limited, and after the lock-in the possible sell-off of Northam Platinum Limited shares into the market to realise the capital value, to redeem the preference shares. In the event that this is not sufficient to settle the liability, it will be secured by the company in terms of a financial guarantee (Northam guarantee).

Should a liability arise under the Northam guarantee, Northam Platinum Limited may settle this liability by capitalising Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited with cash and/or Northam Platinum Limited shares before the redemption amount becomes due or making payment directly to the preference shareholders. The manner of settlement is not contractually specified and is at the discretion of Northam Platinum Limited.

Therefore, should the Northam Platinum Limited share price not increase in value over the next 10 years there could be a significant dilution in value for all Northam Platinum Limited shareholders, should additional shares be issued to the preference shareholders.

No changes were made in the objectives, policies or processes during the years ended 30 June 2017 and 30 June 2016.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Categories of financial instruments

The following table summarises the classification of financial instruments for the group and company:

|                                                           | Available for<br>sale<br>investment | Loans and<br>receivables | Financial<br>liabilities at<br>amortised<br>cost | Non- financial<br>instruments | Total       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
|                                                           | 2017                                | 2017                     | 2017                                             | 2017                          | 2017        |
| Group                                                     | R000                                | R000                     | R000                                             | R000                          | R000        |
| Long term receivables                                     | –                                   | 83 745                   | –                                                | –                             | 83 745      |
| Investment in the Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund | –                                   | 102 233                  | –                                                | –                             | 102 233     |
| Environmental Conservancy Trust                           | –                                   | 68 104                   | –                                                | –                             | 68 104      |
| Buttonshope Conservancy Trust                             | –                                   | 11 126                   | –                                                | –                             | 11 126      |
| Other assets                                              | –                                   | –                        | –                                                | 7 591                         | 7 591       |
| Trade and other receivables                               | –                                   | 340 278                  | –                                                | 208 719                       | 548 997     |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                 | –                                   | 1 786 865                | –                                                | –                             | 1 786 865   |
| Preference share liability                                | –                                   | –                        | (8 279 825)                                      | –                             | (8 279 825) |
| Long term loans                                           | –                                   | –                        | (249 428)                                        | –                             | (249 428)   |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                           | –                                   | –                        | (421 081)                                        | –                             | (421 081)   |
| Current portion of long term loans                        | –                                   | –                        | (13 434)                                         | –                             | (13 434)    |
| Trade and other payables                                  | –                                   | –                        | (1 257 148)                                      | (11 024)                      | (1 268 172) |

|                                                           | Available for<br>sale<br>investment | Loans and<br>receivables | Financial<br>liabilities at<br>amortised<br>cost | Non- financial<br>instruments | Total       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
|                                                           | 2016                                | 2016                     | 2016                                             | 2016                          | 2016        |
| Group                                                     | R000                                | R000                     | R000                                             | R000                          | R000        |
| Unlisted investment                                       | 6                                   | –                        | –                                                | –                             | 6           |
| Long term receivables                                     | –                                   | 89 717                   | –                                                | –                             | 89 717      |
| Investment in the Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund | –                                   | 93 647                   | –                                                | –                             | 93 647      |
| Environmental Conservancy Trust                           | –                                   | 60 345                   | –                                                | –                             | 60 345      |
| Buttonshope Conservancy Trust                             | –                                   | 10 445                   | –                                                | –                             | 10 445      |
| Trade and other receivables                               | –                                   | 237 188                  | –                                                | 138 016                       | 375 204     |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                 | –                                   | 3 105 080                | –                                                | –                             | 3 105 080   |
| Preference share liability                                | –                                   | –                        | (7 429 549)                                      | –                             | (7 429 549) |
| Long term loans                                           | –                                   | –                        | (275 513)                                        | –                             | (275 513)   |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                           | –                                   | –                        | (419 287)                                        | –                             | (419 287)   |
| Current portion of long term loans                        | –                                   | –                        | (13 201)                                         | –                             | (13 201)    |
| Trade and other payables                                  | –                                   | –                        | (864 606)                                        | (13 329)                      | (877 935)   |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

|                                                           | Available for<br>sale<br>investment | Loans and<br>receivables | Financial<br>liabilities at<br>amortised<br>cost | Non- financial<br>instruments | Total       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
|                                                           | 2017                                | 2017                     | 2017                                             | 2017                          | 2017        |
| Company                                                   | R000                                | R000                     | R000                                             | R000                          | R000        |
| Other investment: investment in Zambezi Platinum (RF)     |                                     |                          |                                                  |                               |             |
| Limited preference shares                                 | 230 505                             | –                        | –                                                | –                             | 230 505     |
| Investment in the Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund | –                                   | 48 274                   | –                                                | –                             | 48 274      |
| Environmental Conservancy Trust                           | –                                   | 54 507                   | –                                                | –                             | 54 507      |
| Other assets                                              | –                                   | –                        | –                                                | 7 591                         | 7 591       |
| Subsidiary loans receivable                               | –                                   | 1 838 213                | –                                                | –                             | 1 838 213   |
| Trade and other receivables                               | –                                   | 312 759                  | –                                                | 175 197                       | 487 956     |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                 | –                                   | 1 396 677                | –                                                | –                             | 1 396 677   |
| Long term loans                                           | –                                   | –                        | (249 428)                                        | –                             | (249 428)   |
| Financial guarantee liability                             | –                                   | –                        | (7 535 944)                                      | –                             | (7 535 944) |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                           | –                                   | –                        | (421 081)                                        | –                             | (421 081)   |
| Current portion of long term loans                        | –                                   | –                        | (13 434)                                         | –                             | (13 434)    |
| Trade and other payables                                  | –                                   | –                        | (1 254 864)                                      | –                             | (1 254 864) |

|                                                           | Available for<br>sale<br>investment | Loans and<br>receivables | Financial<br>liabilities at<br>amortised<br>cost | Non- financial<br>instruments | Total       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
|                                                           | 2016                                | 2016                     | 2016                                             | 2016                          | 2016        |
| Company                                                   | R000                                | R000                     | R000                                             | R000                          | R000        |
| Unlisted investment                                       | 6                                   | –                        | –                                                | –                             | 6           |
| Investment in the Northam Platinum Restoration Trust Fund | –                                   | 43 204                   | –                                                | –                             | 43 294      |
| Environmental Conservancy Trust                           | –                                   | 49 187                   | –                                                | –                             | 49 187      |
| Subsidiary loans receivable                               | –                                   | 2 354 983                | –                                                | –                             | 2 354 983   |
| Trade and other receivables                               | –                                   | 163 841                  | –                                                | 110 512                       | 274 353     |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                 | –                                   | 1 654 417                | –                                                | –                             | 1 654 417   |
| Long term loans                                           | –                                   | –                        | (239 350)                                        | –                             | (239 350)   |
| Financial guarantee liability                             | –                                   | –                        | (7 535 944)                                      | –                             | (7 535 944) |
| Domestic medium term debt notes                           | –                                   | –                        | (419 287)                                        | –                             | (419 287)   |
| Current portion of long term loans                        | –                                   | –                        | (9 400)                                          | –                             | (9 400)     |
| Trade and other payables                                  | –                                   | –                        | (885 358)                                        | –                             | (885 358)   |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 47. Related parties

Related party relationships exist between the company and subsidiaries within the Northam Platinum Limited group of companies. Below is a summary of the various subsidiaries and trusts included in the group:

|                                               | Effective holding | Share capital and premium | Investment | Indebtedness | Indebtedness |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|------------|--------------|--------------|
|                                               | 2017              | 2017                      | 2017       | 2017         | 2016         |
|                                               | %                 | R000                      | R000       | R000         | R000         |
| Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited | 100.0             | ***                       | *          | 26 543       | 15 002       |
| Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited#         | 100.0             | 7 106 126                 | 10 166 000 | –            | 1            |
| Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited#     | 100.0             | 6 955 843                 | **         | 1 720 088    | 2 262 163    |
| Eland Platinum Proprietary Limited            | 100.0             | 50 000                    | 50 000     | –            | –            |
| Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited     | 100.0             | 4 358                     | –          | –            | 1 047        |
| Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited            | –                 | –                         | –          | –            | –            |
| Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited    | –                 | ***                       | *          | 9 689        | 14 590       |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited       | –                 | ***                       | *          | 81 893       | 62 180       |
| Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited                 | N/A               | –                         | ****       | –            | –            |
| Northam Zondereinde Community Trust           | –                 | –                         | –          | –            | –            |
| Northam Booyseendal Community Trust           | –                 | –                         | –          | –            | –            |
| Northam Employee Trust                        | –                 | –                         | –          | –            | –            |
| Buttonshepe Conservancy Trust                 | –                 | –                         | –          | –            | –            |
| Northam Restoration Trust Fund                | –                 | –                         | –          | –            | –            |
|                                               |                   |                           | 10 216 000 | 1 838 213    | 2 354 983    |

\*\*\*\*Investment held in Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited preference shares

\*\*\*Issued capital is less than R1 000

\*\*Indirectly held subsidiary through Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited

\*Investment less than R1 000

#These loans will no longer be required, as these loans have either been capitalised or is in the process of being capitalised as part of the restructuring of the Northam group.

Below is a summary of the various transactions and other balances outstanding from group companies, which was eliminated on consolidation:

|                                               | Revenue interest and dividends received | Concentrate purchased | Operating as well as sundry costs | Trade and other receivables | Trade and other payables |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
|                                               | 2017                                    | 2017                  | 2017                              | 2017                        | 2017                     |
|                                               | R000                                    | R000                  | R000                              | R000                        | R000                     |
| Mining Technical Services Proprietary Limited | –                                       | –                     | (3 000)                           | –                           | –                        |
| Khumama Platinum Proprietary Limited          | –                                       | –                     | (1)                               | –                           | –                        |
| Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited      | –                                       | (2 104 293)           | –                                 | –                           | (476 547)                |
| Eland Platinum Proprietary Limited            | –                                       | –                     | –                                 | 13 616                      | –                        |
| Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited    | 2 329                                   | –                     | –                                 | –                           | –                        |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited       | 1 560                                   | –                     | –                                 | –                           | –                        |
| Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited                 | –                                       | –                     | (552)                             | –                           | –                        |
| Northam Zondereinde Community Trust           | –                                       | –                     | –                                 | 2 351                       | –                        |
| Northam Booyseendal Community Trust           | –                                       | –                     | –                                 | 2 351                       | –                        |
| Northam Employee Trust                        | –                                       | –                     | –                                 | 2 352                       | –                        |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

Below is a summary of the various transactions and other balances outstanding from group companies, which was eliminated on consolidation:

|                                            | Revenue<br>interest and<br>dividends<br>received | Concentrate<br>purchased | Operating as<br>well as<br>sundry costs | Trade and<br>other<br>receivables | Trade and<br>other<br>payables |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
|                                            | 2016                                             | 2016                     | 2016                                    | 2016                              | 2016                           |
|                                            | R000                                             | R000                     | R000                                    | R000                              | R000                           |
| Booyseendal Platinum Proprietary Limited   | 24 113                                           | (1 843 980)              | –                                       | –                                 | (363 618)                      |
| Northam Chrome Proprietary Limited         | 127 024                                          | –                        | –                                       | –                                 | –                              |
| Windfall 38 Properties Proprietary Limited | 1 168                                            | –                        | –                                       | –                                 | –                              |
| Norplats Properties Proprietary Limited    | 1 942                                            | –                        | –                                       | –                                 | –                              |
| Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited              | –                                                | –                        | (3 076)                                 | –                                 | –                              |

## Guarantees, subordination agreements and letters of support

Northam Platinum Limited currently has finance facilities available in the form of a revolving credit facility of R1.0 billion with Nedbank Limited, and has issued R425.0 million on the debt capital market. Booyseendal has signed a letter of guarantee concerning both these facilities.

On 25 September 2014, Northam Platinum Limited provided a guarantee to ensure that Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited would meet its financial obligations as and when they fall due as Mvelaphanda Resources Proprietary Limited liabilities exceeded its assets. The guarantee will remain in full force and effect as long as the liabilities (including contingent liabilities) exceed its assets, fairly valued, and will lapse forthwith upon the date that the assets, so valued, exceed its liabilities.

## Zambezi Platinum (RF) Limited is consolidated in the Northam group

Zambezi was created and designed for the sole purpose of providing Northam with BEE credentials and as a structure to hold the listed BEE preference shares. If Northam does not comply with the HDSA requirements in the Mining Charter, it will not be able to retain its mining rights. Northam is able to direct the strategic direction of Zambezi and as per the subscription and relationship agreement between the two companies, Zambezi's memorandum of incorporation may not be amended or replaced without Northam's prior written consent.

Northam assumes full responsibility for the administration of Zambezi as well as any costs incurred by Zambezi up to a certain limit. Furthermore, Northam provides a guarantee for Zambezi's obligation in respect of the preference shares. All these points indicate that Northam has been involved from the inception of the transaction, to ensure that the design and operation of Zambezi achieves the purpose for which it was created. In terms of the transaction, an "N" share was issued to Northam, which gave them the right to implement mitigating action should Zambezi not comply with certain undertakings as per the transaction's agreements and in other limited instances aimed at maintaining the integrity of the transaction at all times. Zambezi can also not dispose of the Northam ordinary shares without the prior consent of Northam. Northam has significant exposure to the variable returns of Zambezi, through the creation and maintenance of the BEE credentials during the 10-year lock-in period as well as through the guarantee provided by Northam. The decision making power of Zambezi's board of directors is restricted to maintaining Northam's BEE credentials and funding arrangements.

All of these factors have been considered in determining that even though Northam does not have majority of the voting rights in Zambezi, it still has control over the entity.

## BEE Community and ESOP Trust

The manner in which the Northam Zondereinde Community Trust, the Northam Booyseendal Community Trust and the Northam Employees' Trust was set up and the contracts governing the relationships between Northam and these Trusts, shows that their relevant activities had already been determined when these trusts were created and will continue to be carried out until such time as the 10-year lock-in period is over or the BEE credentials are no longer required by Northam. There is no scope for any other commercial activity outside of the maintenance of the BEE credentials, the allocation of returns on the Northam share to the beneficiaries of these trusts and the facilitation and maintenance of the external BEE Preference Share funding.

These trusts are therefore under the control of Northam and are therefore consolidated into the group.



# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Key management remuneration

The table below summarises the executive directors' remuneration:

|                      | Fees  | Remuneration package | Performance bonus | Benefits | Gain on share based payments | Total  |
|----------------------|-------|----------------------|-------------------|----------|------------------------------|--------|
|                      | 2017  | 2017                 | 2017              | 2017     | 2017                         | 2017   |
|                      | R000  | R000                 | R000              | R000     | R000                         | R000   |
| <b>Executive</b>     |       |                      |                   |          |                              |        |
| PA Dunne             | –     | 7 291                | 6 217             | 191      | –                            | 13 699 |
| AZ Khumalo           | –     | 3 555                | 3 018             | 168      | 3 158                        | 9 899  |
| <b>Non-executive</b> |       |                      |                   |          |                              |        |
| PL Zim               | 409   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 409    |
| R Havenstein         | 825   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 825    |
| CK Chabedi           | 624   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 624    |
| HH Hickey            | 418   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 418    |
| TE Kgosi             | 732   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 732    |
| AR Martin            | 245   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 245    |
| KB Mosehla           | 515   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 515    |
| TI Mvusi             | 284   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 284    |
| JG Smithies          | 164   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 164    |
|                      | 4 216 | 10 846               | 9 235             | 359      | 3 158                        | 27 814 |

The directors' remuneration for the year ended 30 June 2016 was as follows:

|                      | Fees  | Remuneration package | Performance bonus | Benefits | Gain on share based payments | Total  |
|----------------------|-------|----------------------|-------------------|----------|------------------------------|--------|
|                      | 2016  | 2016                 | 2016              | 2016     | 2016                         | 2016   |
|                      | R000  | R000                 | R000              | R000     | R000                         | R000   |
| <b>Executive</b>     |       |                      |                   |          |                              |        |
| PA Dunne             | –     | 6 165                | 4 353             | 834      | –                            | 11 352 |
| AZ Khumalo           | –     | 3 006                | 2 436             | 441      | 3 707                        | 9 590  |
| <b>Non-executive</b> |       |                      |                   |          |                              |        |
| PL Zim               | 412   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 412    |
| R Havenstein         | 717   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 717    |
| CK Chabedi           | 496   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 496    |
| HH Hickey            | 209   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 209    |
| TE Kgosi             | 609   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 609    |
| AR Martin            | 565   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 565    |
| KB Mosehla           | 357   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 357    |
| TI Mvusi             | 154   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 154    |
| ME Beckett           | 247   | –                    | –                 | –        | –                            | 247    |
|                      | 3 766 | 9 171                | 6 789             | 1 275    | 3 707                        | 24 708 |

No individuals other than executive directors are considered to be prescribed officers. Details of the non-executive fees are disclosed in the directors report.

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## Details of share options granted to directors

A summary of the options held by executive directors at 30 June 2017 is as follows:

| Earliest and latest exercise date      | Price per share in R | Total number of options |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| PA Dunne                               | –                    | –                       |
| AZ Khumalo                             |                      |                         |
| 12 October 2012 and 11 October 2017    | 46.57                | 62 500                  |
| Claw back rights options               | 40.00                | 2 450                   |
| Number of options held at 30 June 2017 |                      | 64 950                  |

A summary of the options held by executive directors at 30 June 2016 is as follows:

| Earliest and latest exercise date      | Price per share in R | Total number of options |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| PA Dunne                               | –                    | –                       |
| AZ Khumalo                             |                      |                         |
| 12 October 2012 and 11 October 2017    | 46.57                | 125 000                 |
| Claw back rights options               | 40.00                | 4 901                   |
| Number of options held at 30 June 2016 |                      | 129 901                 |

## Details of share incentives granted to directors

Below is an analysis of share incentives held as at 30 June 2017:

|                                                | 4 Nov 2014<br>Share award | 11 Nov 2015<br>Share award | 8 Nov 2016<br>Share award | Total   |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|---------|
| <b>Retention shares and performance shares</b> |                           |                            |                           |         |
| PA Dunne                                       |                           |                            |                           |         |
| Balance at 1 July 2016                         | 150 300                   | 193 200                    | –                         | 343 500 |
| Retention shares awarded during the year       | –                         | –                          | 42 900                    | 42 900  |
| Performance shares awarded during the year     | –                         | –                          | 127 200                   | 127 200 |
| Shares cash settled during the year            | –                         | –                          | –                         | –       |
| Balance at 30 June 2017                        | 150 300                   | 193 200                    | 170 100                   | 513 600 |
| Balance at 1 July 2015                         | 150 300                   | –                          | –                         | 150 300 |
| Retention shares awarded during the year       | –                         | 48 700                     | –                         | 48 700  |
| Performance shares awarded during the year     | –                         | 144 500                    | –                         | 144 500 |
| Shares cash settled during the year            | –                         | –                          | –                         | –       |
| Balance at 30 June 2016                        | 150 300                   | 193 200                    | –                         | 343 500 |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

Below is an analysis of share incentives held as at 30 June 2017:

|                                                                | 6 Nov 2012<br>Share award | 15 Nov 2013<br>Share award | 4 Nov 2014<br>Share award | 11 Nov 2015<br>Share award | 8 Nov 2016<br>Share award | Total     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------|
| <b>Retention shares and performance shares</b>                 |                           |                            |                           |                            |                           |           |
| AZ Khumalo                                                     |                           |                            |                           |                            |                           |           |
| Balance at 1 July 2016                                         | –                         | 78 000                     | 150 300                   | 193 200                    | –                         | 421 500   |
| Retention shares awarded during the year                       | –                         | –                          | –                         | –                          | 20 900                    | 20 900    |
| Performance shares awarded during the year                     | –                         | –                          | –                         | –                          | 62 000                    | 62 000    |
| Shares adjusted for performance conditions met during the year | –                         | (20 280)                   | –                         | –                          | –                         | (20 280)  |
| Shares cash settled during the year                            | –                         | (57 720)                   | –                         | –                          | –                         | (57 720)  |
| Balance at 30 June 2017                                        | –                         | –                          | 150 300                   | 193 200                    | 82 900                    | 426 400   |
| Balance at 1 July 2015                                         | 98 000                    | 122 000                    | 150 300                   | –                          | –                         | 370 300   |
| Retention shares awarded during the year                       | –                         | –                          | –                         | 48 700                     | –                         | 48 700    |
| Performance shares awarded during the year                     | –                         | –                          | –                         | 144 500                    | –                         | 144 500   |
| Shares adjusted for performance conditions met during the year | (28 420)                  | –                          | –                         | –                          | –                         | (28 420)  |
| Shares cash settled during the year                            | (69 580)                  | (44 000)                   | –                         | –                          | –                         | (113 580) |
| Balance at 30 June 2016                                        | –                         | 78 000                     | 150 300                   | 193 200                    | –                         | 421 500   |

## Details of Lock in and Incentive Mechanism (LIM) shares granted to directors

Summary of the LIM shares held by executive directors at 30 June 2017 are as follows:

|                                | PA Dunne  | AZ Khumalo |
|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| Balance at 1 July 2016         | –         | –          |
| Shares awarded during the year | 1 500 000 | 700 000    |
| Balance at 30 June 2017        | 1 500 000 | 700 000    |

# NOTES TO THE ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended 30 June 2017

## 48. Commitments

At year-end the group and company had the following commitments arising in the ordinary course of business:

|                                                                                                              | Group     |         | Company   |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|
|                                                                                                              | 2017      | 2016    | 2017      | 2016    |
|                                                                                                              | R000      | R000    | R000      | R000    |
| Capital expenditure – Booyseindal mine                                                                       |           |         |           |         |
| Authorised but not contracted                                                                                | 273 288   | 404 054 | –         | –       |
| Contracted                                                                                                   | 1 076 712 | 209 849 | –         | –       |
| Capital expenditure – Zondereinde mine                                                                       |           |         |           |         |
| Authorised but not contracted                                                                                | 313 436   | 189 785 | 313 436   | 189 785 |
| Contracted                                                                                                   | 1 385 807 | 660 939 | 1 385 807 | 660 939 |
| Information Technology – outsource service provider                                                          |           |         |           |         |
| Due within one year                                                                                          | 24 104    | 20 903  | 15 536    | 15 458  |
| Due within two to five years                                                                                 | 4 055     | 2 441   | 2 408     | 2 016   |
| Operating lease rentals – office equipment                                                                   |           |         |           |         |
| Due within one year                                                                                          | 2 615     | 1 359   | 1 774     | 1 183   |
| Due within two to five years                                                                                 | 2 657     | 314     | 1 431     | 315     |
| Operating lease rentals – premises as lessee                                                                 |           |         |           |         |
| Due within one year                                                                                          | 5 414     | 5 307   | 5 414     | 2 352   |
| Due within two to five years                                                                                 | 15 772    | 21 186  | 15 772    | 9 269   |
| The lease rental for the corporate office contains an option to renew the lease for an additional five years |           |         |           |         |
| Employee housing development contracted for                                                                  | –         | 207     | –         | –       |
| Bank guarantee issued                                                                                        | 75 970    | 50 717  | 50 580    | 50 717  |

These commitments will be funded from a combination of internal retentions and debt.

## 49. Events after the reporting period

Subsequent to year-end, an agreement was entered into to purchase a suite of PGM recycling equipment and the associated premises from A-1 Specialized Services Inc., a recycler of PGMs. The business is located in the state of Pennsylvania, United States of America. The total value of the transaction amounts to USD10.7 million in cash.

In addition to the above, the section 102 Ministerial Consent relating to the approval for the purchase of the Tumela block mineral resources from Anglo American Platinum Limited for R1.0 billion was obtained.

Apart from this transaction, there have been no other events subsequent to the year-end, which require additional disclosure or adjustment to these financial results.

# ADMINISTRATION AND CONTACT INFORMATION

## **NORTHAM PLATINUM LIMITED**

(Registration number 1977/003282/06)  
Share code: NHM ISIN: ZAE000030912  
Debt issuer code: NHMI  
Bond code: NHM002  
Bond ISIN: ZAG000129024  
Bond code: NHM003  
Bond ISIN: ZAG000129032

## **REGISTERED OFFICE**

Building 4, 1st Floor  
Maxwell Office Park  
Magwa Crescent West  
Waterfall City  
Jukskei View 2090  
South Africa

PO Box 412694  
Craighall 2024  
South Africa

Telephone: +27 11 759 6000  
Fax: +27 11 325 4795

## **WEBSITE**

[www.northam.co.za](http://www.northam.co.za)

## **COMPANY SECRETARY**

PB Beale  
Building 4, 1st Floor  
Maxwell Office Park  
Magwa Crescent West  
Waterfall City  
Jukskei View 2090  
South Africa

Email: [trish.beale@norplats.co.za](mailto:trish.beale@norplats.co.za)

## **BANKERS**

Standard Bank of South Africa Limited  
30 Baker Street  
Rosebank 2196  
South Africa

PO Box 61029  
Marshalltown 2107  
South Africa

## **AUDITORS**

Ernst & Young Inc  
102 Rivonia Road  
Sandton 2146  
South Africa

Private Bag X14  
Sandton 2146  
South Africa

## **TRANSFER SECRETARIES**

Computershare Investor Services  
Proprietary Limited  
Rosebank Towers  
15 Biermann Avenue  
Rosebank 2196  
South Africa

PO Box 61051  
Marshalltown 2107  
South Africa

Telephone: +27 11 370 5000  
Fax: +27 11 688 5238

## **SPONSOR AND DEBT SPONSOR**

One Capital  
17 Fricker Road  
Illovo 2196  
South Africa

PO Box 784573  
Sandton 2146  
South Africa

## **INVESTOR RELATIONS**

LC van Schalkwyk  
Telephone: +27 11 759 6000  
Email: [leon.vanschalkwyk@norplats.co.za](mailto:leon.vanschalkwyk@norplats.co.za)

R&A Strategic Communications  
PO Box 1457  
Parklands 2121  
South Africa

Telephone: +27 11 880 3924  
Email: [marion@rasc.co.za](mailto:marion@rasc.co.za)

# **NORTHAM**

P L A T I N U M L I M I T E D

[www.northam.co.za](http://www.northam.co.za)